

INSEIKAI Tohoku BootCamp for Economists  
**Mathematics II**  
**Differential Equations, Dynamic Optimization and**  
**Financial Mathematics**

Quang-Thanh Tran <sup>†</sup>

Ye Zhang <sup>‡ §</sup>

Graduate School of Economics and Management  
Tohoku University

August 20, 2023

Revised: September 4, 2023

<sup>†</sup>tran.quang.thanh.p1@dc.tohoku.ac.jp (“Tedd”)

<sup>‡</sup>zhang.ye.q8@dc.tohoku.ac.jp (“Tony”)

<sup>§</sup>This material is prepared for the Summer Bootcamp 2023. To access other materials, visit:  
Spring: [https://github.com/thanhqtran/tohoku\\_bootcamp/tree/main/spring2023/math](https://github.com/thanhqtran/tohoku_bootcamp/tree/main/spring2023/math)  
Summer: [https://github.com/thanhqtran/tohoku\\_bootcamp/tree/main/summer2023/math](https://github.com/thanhqtran/tohoku_bootcamp/tree/main/summer2023/math)  
Camp homepage: [https://thanhqtran.github.io/tohoku\\_bootcamp/](https://thanhqtran.github.io/tohoku_bootcamp/)  
Github: [https://github.com/thanhqtran/tohoku\\_bootcamp/tree/main](https://github.com/thanhqtran/tohoku_bootcamp/tree/main)



# Contents

<b>Preface</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>1 First-Order Difference Equations</b>	<b>9</b>
1.1 One Variable Difference Equations . . . . .	9
1.1.1 Linear case . . . . .	9
1.1.2 Nonlinear case . . . . .	11
1.1.3 Economic Applications . . . . .	13
1.2 System of 2 Difference Equations . . . . .	14
1.2.1 Eigenvalues and Eigenvectors . . . . .	14
1.2.2 System of 2 Linear Difference Equations . . . . .	16
1.2.3 System of 2 Nonlinear Difference Equations . . . . .	19
1.3 Economic Applications . . . . .	21
<b>2 Static Optimization and Economic Modeling</b>	<b>23</b>
2.1 Unconstraint Optimization . . . . .	23
2.1.1 Necessary Conditions . . . . .	23
2.1.2 Sufficient Conditions . . . . .	24
2.1.3 Examples . . . . .	26
2.1.4 Economic Applications . . . . .	27
2.2 Constraint Optimization . . . . .	29
2.2.1 Necessary First-order Conditions . . . . .	29
2.2.2 Sufficient Conditions . . . . .	30
2.2.3 Examples . . . . .	32
2.2.4 Economic Applications . . . . .	33
2.3 Constraint Inequality Optimization . . . . .	35
2.3.1 KKT First-order Conditions for MAX . . . . .	35
2.3.2 KKT First-order Conditions for MIN . . . . .	35
2.3.3 Multiple Inequality Constraints . . . . .	36
2.3.4 Nonnegativity Constraints . . . . .	38
2.3.5 Examples . . . . .	39
2.3.6 Economic Applications . . . . .	40
2.4 Economic Modeling . . . . .	43
2.4.1 Endogenous fertility OLG . . . . .	43
2.4.2 Endogenous human capital OLG . . . . .	45
<b>3 First-Order Differential Equations</b>	<b>47</b>
3.1 Definition . . . . .	47
3.2 One-variable: Linear case . . . . .	48
3.2.1 Autonomous . . . . .	48
3.2.2 Stability . . . . .	50

3.2.3	Nonautonomous . . . . .	51
3.2.4	Bernoulli Differential Equations . . . . .	52
3.3	System of 2 Differential Equations . . . . .	54
3.3.1	Linear Homogeneous System . . . . .	54
3.3.2	Nonlinear Homogeneous Systems . . . . .	56
3.4	Phase Diagrams . . . . .	58
3.4.1	Single Variable Differential Equations . . . . .	58
3.4.2	System of 2 Linear Differential Equations . . . . .	59
3.4.3	System of 2 Nonlinear Differential Equations . . . . .	61
<b>4</b>	<b>Dynamic Programming</b>	<b>65</b>
4.1	The Ramsey model . . . . .	66
4.2	Lagrangian Method . . . . .	66
4.3	Bellman Method . . . . .	67
4.4	Closed-Form Solutions . . . . .	69
4.4.1	Guess and Verify the Policy Function . . . . .	69
4.4.2	Guess and Verify the Value Function . . . . .	69
4.5	Value Function Iteration . . . . .	71
4.5.1	The Algorithm . . . . .	71
4.5.2	Euler Equation Iteration . . . . .	72
4.6	Programming . . . . .	73
4.7	Steady States and Stability . . . . .	76
4.7.1	The Steady State . . . . .	76
4.7.2	Stability . . . . .	76
4.8	Stochasticity and Real Business Cycle . . . . .	79
4.8.1	Simple Stochastic Model . . . . .	80
4.8.2	Simulations . . . . .	83
4.8.3	Real Business Cycle with Labor Choice . . . . .	85
<b>5</b>	<b>Optimal Control</b>	<b>87</b>
5.1	Lagrangian Method . . . . .	87
5.2	Hamiltonian . . . . .	89
5.3	Examples . . . . .	91
5.4	Exercises . . . . .	92
<b>6</b>	<b>Basics of Probability Theory, Brownian Motion, and Martingales</b>	<b>95</b>
6.1	Probability Theory . . . . .	95
6.1.1	Probability space . . . . .	95
6.1.2	Random variables . . . . .	95
6.1.3	Expectations and conditional expectations . . . . .	96
6.1.4	Stochastic processes . . . . .	96
6.2	Brownian motion . . . . .	97
6.2.1	Standard Brownian motion . . . . .	97
6.2.2	General Brownian motion . . . . .	98
6.2.3	Geometric Brownian motion . . . . .	98
6.3	Martingales . . . . .	99
6.3.1	Discrete time martingales . . . . .	99
6.3.2	Filtration . . . . .	99
6.3.3	Continuous time martingales . . . . .	100

<b>7 Stochastic Calculus and Ito Process</b>	<b>101</b>
7.1 Ito integral . . . . .	101
7.1.1 Example . . . . .	101
7.1.2 Simple processes . . . . .	103
7.1.3 General Ito integral . . . . .	104
7.2 Ito formula . . . . .	105
7.2.1 Diffusion process . . . . .	105
7.2.2 Ito formula . . . . .	105
7.2.3 Geometric Brownian motion revisited . . . . .	107
7.2.4 Mean-reverting process . . . . .	108
<b>8 Introduction to Derivative Securities</b>	<b>109</b>
8.1 Derivative securities . . . . .	109
8.1.1 Definitions . . . . .	109
8.1.2 Assumptions . . . . .	109
8.2 Forward contracts . . . . .	110
8.3 Futures . . . . .	112
8.3.1 Forward vs Futures . . . . .	112
8.3.2 Hedging with futures . . . . .	112
8.4 Options . . . . .	113
8.4.1 Introduction . . . . .	113
8.4.2 Greeks . . . . .	116
<b>9 Binomial Model</b>	<b>119</b>
9.1 Option pricing - discrete time . . . . .	119
9.1.1 One-period model . . . . .	119
9.1.2 Two-period model . . . . .	121
9.1.3 n-period model . . . . .	123
9.1.4 Alternative underlying assets . . . . .	124
9.2 Approximation to continuous-time model . . . . .	125
<b>10 Black-Scholes Option Pricing Model</b>	<b>127</b>
10.1 Introduction . . . . .	127
10.1.1 Assumptions . . . . .	127
10.1.2 The Black-Scholes model . . . . .	128
10.1.3 Proof - the PDE approach . . . . .	129
10.1.4 Preliminaries . . . . .	129
10.1.5 Martingale (5-step) approach . . . . .	131
10.1.6 Proof - martingale (5-step) approach . . . . .	132
10.2 Garman-Kohlhagen model . . . . .	134
10.3 Greeks . . . . .	135
<b>References</b>	<b>135</b>
<b>Appendix A Cheatsheets</b>	<b>141</b>
A.1 Differentiation . . . . .	141
A.2 Integration . . . . .	142
A.3 Taylor Series Formula . . . . .	142
A.4 Implicit Function Theorem . . . . .	143
A.5 Intermediate Value Theorem . . . . .	143
A.6 Matrix Algebra . . . . .	144

A.7 Jacobians, Gradients, and Hessians . . . . .	147
<b>Appendix B Solutions to Some Problems</b>	<b>149</b>
B.1 OLG Model . . . . .	149
B.2 Endogenous Retirement . . . . .	150

# Preface

Continuing from the Spring camp, this Summer Camp provides a more advanced background on the mathematical tools used in many economic models. We first briefly study difference equations and stability analysis, then review and expand the static optimization exercises. After that, we learn a different branch of literature dealing with dynamic optimization. Here, both discrete and continuous dynamic optimization methods are introduced. Finally, we study the mathematics often used in finance, such as Brownian motions in financial markets, derivative securities, and asset pricing.

**Please read these notes WITH A GRAIN OF SALT as it potentially contains many errors and typos.**

## Syllabus

---

(1) Difference Equations	(2) Unconstraint Optimization
(3) Constraint Optimization	(4) Inequality Optimization
(5) Economic Applications	(6) Differential Equations
(7) Phase Diagrams	(8) Dynamic Programming
(9) DP in Models	(10) Optimal Control
(11) Continuous OLG or DSGE	(12) Brownian motion & Martingales
(13) Stochastic calculus	(14) Derivative securities
(15) Binomial model	(16) Black-Scholes pricing model

---

**Textbooks:** These are all excellent textbooks and materials. They are self-contained and extremely valuable to your research life.

1. Sydsæter and Hammond (2008); Sydsæter et al. (2008) [accessible math]
2. Chiang (1984, 1992) [old but gold]
3. Simon and Blume (1994) [the bible in math and economic theory]
4. Shone (2002) [concise, lucid in dynamical economics]
5. de la Croix and Michel (2002) [foundations in OLG and growth]
6. Chu (2021) [a lot of good exercises on optimal control]
7. McCandless (2008) [foundations in business cycle]
8. Heer and Maussner (2009) [foundations in DSGE]
9. Campante et al. (2021) [easy to read on macroeconomic theories]
10. Acemoglu (2008) [rigor]
11. Michaillat (2023) [concise, practical with a lot of exercises]



# Chapter 1

## First-Order Difference Equations

In economic growth theory, in studies of the extraction of natural resources, in many models in environmental economics, and in several other areas of economics that have one key variable moves based on its past values, you will have to deal with dynamics. If we talk about dynamics, we talk about difference (in discrete time), or differential (in continuous time) equations. For the scope of this course, we are only concerned about the first-order difference equation, that is, tomorrow's value only depends on today, not including yesterday.

In preparation of the materials presented here, we reference [Sydsæter and Hammond \(2008\)](#); [Sydsæter et al. \(2008\)](#) and [Chiang \(1984, p.616\)](#). For differential equations, read [Sydsæter et al. \(2008, Chapter 5, 6\)](#), [Simon and Blume \(1994, Chapter 23,24,25\)](#)

### 1.1 One Variable Difference Equations

#### 1.1.1 Linear case

A simple example of a linear first-order difference equation is

$$x_{t+1} = ax_t$$

for  $t = 0, 1, \dots$  and  $a$  is a constant. Suppose  $x_0$  is given, if we repeatedly applying the function for different  $t$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 &= ax_0, \\ x_2 &= ax_1 = a^2 x_0, \\ x_3 &= ax_2 = a^3 x_0, \dots \end{aligned}$$

which we can generalize it as

$$x_t = x_0 a^t$$

So that at any time  $t$ , given  $x_0$  is known, we can calculate the current value of  $x_t$ . We can expand it by adding a constant  $b^{(1)}$ . so the difference equation becomes

$$x_{t+1} = ax_t + b \tag{1.1}$$

---

<sup>(1)</sup>If  $b = g(t)$ , that is, the difference equation also depends on time  $t$ , then it is called non-autonomous. If the difference equation does not depend on  $t$ , then it is called autonomous

which gives us the SOLUTION as follows.

$$x_t = a^t \left( x_0 - \frac{b}{1-a} \right) + \frac{b}{1-a} \quad (a \neq 1)$$

We now discuss the notion of **stationary point**. Consider the solution of (1.1). If

$$x_0 = \frac{b}{1-a}$$

then

$$x_t = \frac{b}{1-a} \quad \forall t$$

This solution  $\bar{x} = b/(1-a)$  is called an equilibrium, or stationary, or steady state of (1.1). To find such an equilibrium state  $\bar{x}$ , we need to find  $\bar{x}$  such that

$$\bar{x} = a\bar{x} + b$$

Suppose that  $|a| < 1$  then

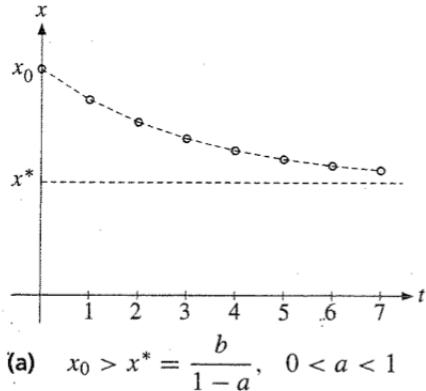
$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} a^t = 0$$

implying that

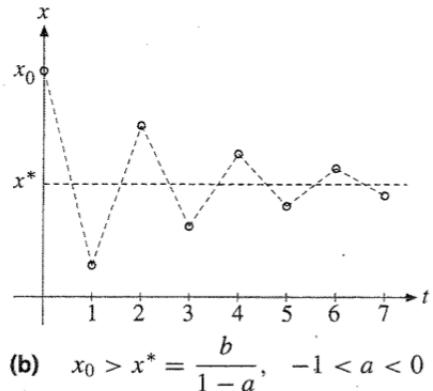
$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} x_t = \frac{b}{1-a}$$

Hence, so long as  $-1 < a < 1$ , the solution converges to the equilibrium state as  $t \rightarrow \infty$  and we say that the difference equation is globally asymptotically stable. But what would happen otherwise?

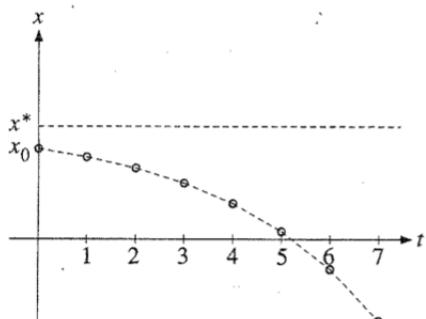
Let us now discuss **stability** by the following illustration.



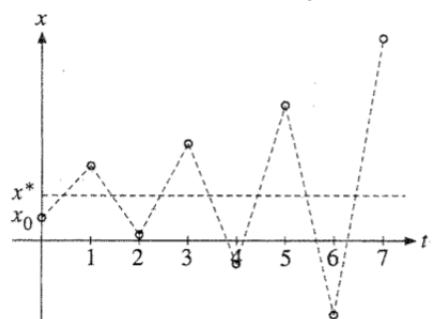
(a)  $x_0 > x^* = \frac{b}{1-a}, \quad 0 < a < 1$



(b)  $x_0 > x^* = \frac{b}{1-a}, \quad -1 < a < 0$



(c)  $x_0 < x^* = \frac{b}{1-a}, \quad a > 1$



(d)  $x_0 < x^* = \frac{b}{1-a}, \quad a < -1$

Fig. 1.1. Dynamics of stable and unstable equations (Sydsæter et al., 2008, p.393)

We summarize the cases in Fig.1.1 as follows.

- (a)  $x_t$  decreases monotonically and converges to the equilibrium state  $x^*$ .
- (b)  $x_t$  exhibits decreasing fluctuations, or **damped oscillations** around  $x^*$ .
- (c)  $x_t$  tends to  $-\infty$  monotonically (it never reaches  $x^*$ ).
- (d)  $x_t$  exhibits increasing fluctuations, or **explosive oscillations** around  $x^*$ . It does cross  $x^*$  at some point but never converges to it.

Thus, the condition that  $|a| < 1$  is necessary to guarantee that the dynamics of  $x_t$  converge to the steady state  $x^*$ .

### 1.1.2 Nonlinear case

So far, we only consider linear difference equations. Although this case is easy, we almost never encounter them in economics because most dynamics in economics are nonlinear. Let us consider an autonomous first-order difference equation of one variable

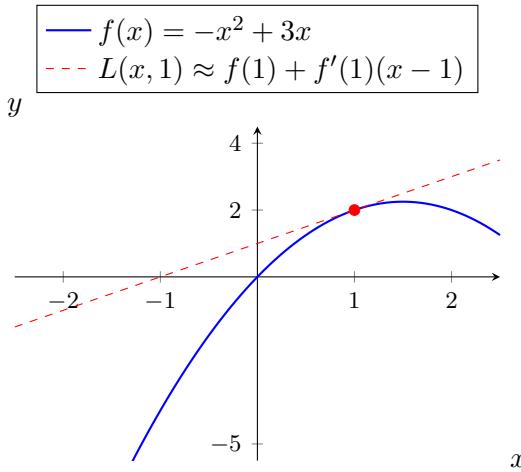
$$x_t = f(x_{t-1}) \quad (1.2)$$

The procedure to find the stationary point is still the same. We still need to solve for  $x^*$  such that

$$x^* = f(x^*)$$

The solution to this is called a fixed point. How can we determine the stability of this fixed point?

It turns out, the idea behind the stability conditions stems from linear approximation. The Taylor expansion shows how the function behaves about one specific point.



**Fig. 1.2.** Linear approximation of  $f(x)$  near  $x = 1$ .

In our case, the behavior of  $x_t$  about this point is

$$f(x_{t-1}) = f(x^*) + f'(x^*)(x_{t-1} - x^*) + R_2(x_{t-1}, x^*)$$

$R$  is the remainder. If at the initial point,  $x_0$  is sufficiently close to  $x^*$ , then  $R \approx 0$ . Since we are estimating the point close to  $x^*$ , we can ignore  $R$ . The point  $x_t$  about  $x^*$  can be now expressed as

$$x_t = f(x^*) + f'(x^*)(x_{t-1} - x^*).$$

This is just similar to (1.1), so we just apply their conditions to ours, and we arrive at the following conclusion.

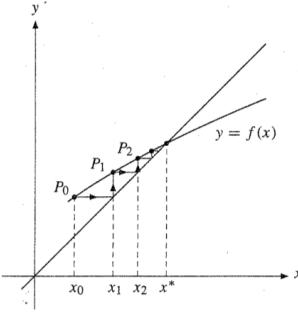


Figure 1  $x^*$  stable,  $f'(x^*) \in (0, 1)$ .

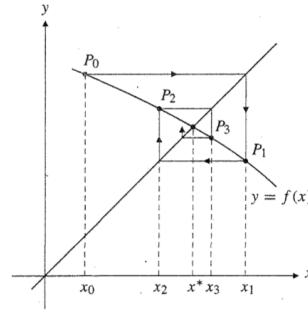


Figure 2  $x^*$  stable,  $f'(x^*) \in (-1, 0)$ .

(a) Stable  $f'(x_t) < 1$

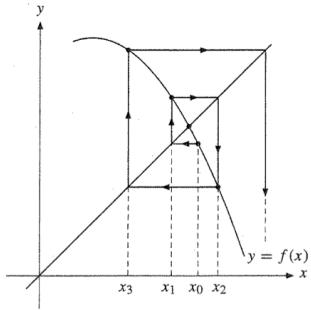


Figure 3  $x^*$  unstable,  $|f'(x^*)| > 1$ .

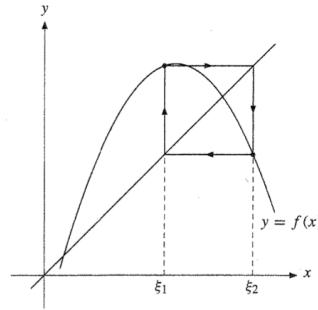


Figure 4 A cycle of period 2.

(b) Unstable  $f'(x_t) > 1$

Fig. 1.3. Dynamics of some nonlinear equations ([Sydsæter et al., 2008, p.420](#))

**Theorem 1.1.1** (Stability condition). *Let  $\bar{x}$  be a stationary state for the difference equation  $x_{t+1} = f(x_t)$ , and suppose that  $f$  is differentiable in an open interval around  $x^*$ .*

1. *If  $|f'(x^*)| < 1$ , then  $x^*$  is **locally asymptotically stable***
2. *If  $|f'(x^*)| > 1$ , then  $x^*$  is **unstable***
3. *If  $|f'(x^*)| = 1$ , the situation is inconclusive (you will need to analyze the higher orders) – see [Shone \(2002, p. 89\)](#)*

For formal proof, see [Sydsæter et al. \(2008, p.419\)](#)

Again, let us examine the stability illustrated in Fig.1.3.

1. Here,  $0 < f'(x^*) < 1$  (derivative is positive) so the sequence monotonically converges to  $x^*$ .

2. In this case,  $-1 < f'(x^*) < 0$  (derivative is negative) so  $x_t$  alternates between values above and below the equilibrium state  $x^*$ . Eventually, it converges to  $x^*$ .
3. This is the first case of unstable dynamics. Since  $f'(x^*) > 1$ ,  $x$  is getting farther away from the equilibrium point.
4. This is a special case where solutions exhibit cyclic behavior (in this case, a cycle of period 2).

Let us explore the last case in more detail. A cycle of period 2 has the following property

first cycle	$x_0 = x_2 = x_4 = \dots,$
second cycle	$x_1 = x_3 = x_5 = \dots,$
the 2 cycles are different	$x_0 \neq x_1$

This case happens if and only if there are 2 solutions for (1.2). Let us call them  $\xi_1, \xi_2$ . (pronounced /ksai/ or /zai/). Hence

$$\begin{aligned}\xi_1 &= f(\xi_1), \\ \xi_2 &= f(\xi_2).\end{aligned}$$

If we let  $F = f \circ f$ , it is clear that  $\xi_1$  and  $\xi_2$  must be fixed points of  $F$  and hence the equilibria of the difference equation

$$y_{t+1} = F(y_t) = f(f(y_t)),$$

where  $y_t = x_t x_{t+1}$ . Now, we change the focus only to the stability of  $y_t$ . Applying Theorem 1.1.1, the dynamic is stable if and only if  $F'(y_t) < 1$ . By Chain rule

$$F'(x) = f'(f(x)) \cdot f'(x)$$

so that

$$F'(\xi_1) = f'(f(\xi_2)) f'(\xi_1) = f'(\xi_2) f'(\xi_1) = F'(\xi_2).$$

Therefore, we can state

**Theorem 1.1.2.** *If (1.2) admits a cycle of period 2, alternating between values  $\xi_1$  and  $\xi_2$ , then:*

1. If  $|f'(\xi_1)f'(\xi_2)| < 1$ , the cycle is locally asymptotically stable.
2. If  $|f'(\xi_1)f'(\xi_2)| > 1$ , the cycle is unstable.

### 1.1.3 Economic Applications

**Ex. 1.1.** Find the fixed point and determine their stability (Shone, 2002, p.97)

1.  $y_{t+1} = 2y_t - y_t^2$ ,
2.  $y_{t+1} = 3.2y_t - 0.8y_t^2$

**Ex. 1.2** (Harrod-Domar growth). Consider the following model

$$\begin{aligned}Y_t &= f(K_t) = K_t^\alpha, \\ S_t &= I_t = sY_t, \\ K_{t+1} &= I_t - \delta K_t\end{aligned}$$

1. Write the fundamental difference equation relating  $K_{t+1} = \phi(K_t)$ .
2. Find the equilibrium point  $K_{t+1} = K_t = K^*$ .
3. Establish its stability.

**Ex. 1.3** (Solow Growth). Consider the economy where

$$\begin{aligned} S_t &= sY_t, \\ I_t &= K_t - (1 - \delta)K_{t-1}, \\ S_t &= I_t, \\ Y_t &= AK_t^\alpha L_t^{1-\alpha}, \\ L_t &= (1 + n)L_{t-1} \end{aligned}$$

1. Define  $k_t = K_t/L_t$ , write the fundamental equation.
2. Derive the steady state  $k^*$ .
3. Let  $A = 5, \alpha = 0.25, s = 0.1, n = 0.02, \delta = 0.05, k_0 = 20$ , derive numerically.
4. Use linear approximation to investigate its stability.

## 1.2 System of 2 Difference Equations

Things get more complicated when there are 2 variables revolving around each other. Consider the following case system

$$\begin{aligned} x_{t+1} &= f(x_t, y_t) \\ y_{t+1} &= g(x_t, y_t) \end{aligned} \tag{1.3}$$

Functions  $\phi, \psi$  can be linear or nonlinear, just like the case with one variable. Before diving into things, let us take a detour and do some exercises on finding the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of a matrix.

### 1.2.1 Eigenvalues and Eigenvectors

**Definition:** Given a square matrix  $\mathbf{A}$ , an eigenvalue of  $\mathbf{A}$  is a scalar  $\lambda$  for which there exists a non-zero vector  $v$  such that the following equation holds:

$$\mathbf{A}v = \lambda v$$

Here,  $v$  is called an eigenvector corresponding to the eigenvalue  $\lambda$ . In other words, when the matrix  $\mathbf{A}$  is applied to the vector  $v$ , the resulting vector is a scalar multiple of  $v$  (scaled by  $\lambda$ ). <sup>(2)</sup>

#### Steps in finding the Eigenvectors and Eigenvalues

Let  $v$  be the eigenvector  $v$  associated with eigenvalue  $\lambda$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{A}v &= \lambda v \\ \Rightarrow (\mathbf{A} - \lambda)v &= 0 \\ \Rightarrow (\mathbf{A} - \lambda\mathbf{I})v &= 0 \\ \iff \det(\mathbf{A} - \lambda\mathbf{I}) &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

Solving this expression gives us the eigenvalues  $\lambda$  and the eigenvector  $x$ .

#### Checks when you found the eigenvalues

---

<sup>(2)</sup>To understand more intuitively, visit: <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=PFDu9oVAE-g&list=PL0-GT3co4r2y2YErbmujw2L5tW4Ew205B&index=14>

1. (trace) the sum of all the eigenvalues will be the sum of the diagonal of  $\mathbf{A}$
2. (determinants) the product of all the eigenvalues is the determinant.

The eigenvectors tell you the directions that do not change during some linear transformation, while the eigenvalues tell you the scaling vector of these eigenvectors.

*Proof.* Suppose  $\mathbf{A}$  is a square  $2 \times 2$  matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$$

Then finding the eigenvalues is to solve

$$\left| \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} \lambda & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda \end{pmatrix} \right| = \begin{vmatrix} a - \lambda & b \\ c & d - \lambda \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

And the eigenvalues  $\lambda$  are the solutions of the following **Characteristic Equation**:

$$\begin{aligned} (a - \lambda)(d - \lambda) - bc &= 0 \\ \Leftrightarrow \lambda^2 - \underbrace{(a + d)}_{\beta} \lambda + \underbrace{(ad - bc)}_{\alpha} &= 0 \end{aligned} \quad (1.4)$$

This is called the characteristic polynomial and the eigenvalues are the roots. You can find the solutions by using quadratic formula.

Let

$$\Delta = \beta^2 - 4\alpha$$

1. if  $\Delta = 0$ , there is one real root  $\lambda = -\frac{\beta}{2}$
2. if  $\Delta > 0$ , there are 2 real roots  $\lambda_{1,2} = \frac{-\beta \pm \sqrt{\Delta}}{2}$ .
3. if  $\Delta < 0$ , there are 2 complex roots  $\lambda_{1,2} = \frac{-\beta \pm i\sqrt{|\Delta|}}{2}$  where  $i = \sqrt{-1}$ .

The verification process actually is a corollary of the Vieta's formulas.

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda_1 + \lambda_2 &= -\beta \equiv a + d = \text{tr}(\mathbf{A}), \\ \lambda_1 \lambda_2 &= \alpha \equiv (ad - bc) = \det(\mathbf{A}) \end{aligned}$$

For each eigenvalue  $\lambda$ , find the corresponding eigenvector by solving the system of equations  $(A - \lambda I)\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$ :

$$(A - \lambda I)\mathbf{v} = \begin{pmatrix} a - \lambda & b \\ c & d - \lambda \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} v_1 \\ v_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

For  $\lambda_1$ :

$$\begin{pmatrix} a - \lambda_1 & b \\ c & d - \lambda_1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} v_{1,1} \\ v_{1,2} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

For  $\lambda_1$ :

$$\begin{pmatrix} a - \lambda_2 & b \\ c & d - \lambda_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} v_{2,1} \\ v_{2,2} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

■

**Example 1.1.** Find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 5 & 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Solution:**

1. (eigenvalues) We need to solve

$$\begin{vmatrix} 2 - \lambda & 3 \\ 5 & 4 - \lambda \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

which yields  $\lambda_1 = 7$  and  $\lambda_2 = -1$ . These are the eigenvalues. We can do a quick verification.

- (a) (trace)  $\lambda_1 + \lambda_2 = 6 = 2 + 4$  (diagonal of  $\mathbf{A}$ )
  - (b) (determinants)  $\lambda_1 \times \lambda_2 = -7 = \det \mathbf{A} (= 2 \times 4 - 5 \times 3)$ .
2. (eigenvector) Let the eigenvectors be  $\mathbf{v} = (v_1, v_2)$ ,  $\mathbf{u} = (u_1, u_2)$

Now, for  $\lambda_1 = 7$ , one need to solve

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2 - 7 & 3 \\ 5 & 4 - 7 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} v_1 \\ v_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

$v_1$  and  $v_2$  are the solutions of

$$\begin{aligned} -5v_1 + 3v_2 &= 0 \\ 5v_1 - 3v_2 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

So the relation between the 2 elements of the vector is

$$v_1 = \frac{3}{5}v_1,$$

which gives the eigenvector  $\mathbf{v} = \left(\frac{3}{5}, 1\right)$ <sup>(3)</sup> for the eigenvalue  $\lambda_1 = 7$ .

Similarly, we can find the other eigenvector  $\mathbf{u} = (-1, 1)$  for the eigenvalue  $\lambda_2 = -1$ .

**Ex. 1.4.** Find the eigenvalues and verify them for the following matrices

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{A} &= \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 8 \\ 4 & -1 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{B} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 6 \\ -1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{C} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{D} = \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 1 \\ 2 & 3 \end{pmatrix}, \\ \mathbf{E} &= \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 2 \\ 4 & -5 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{F} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 3 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 \end{pmatrix}, \mathbf{G} = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & -2 & 1 \\ 1 & 5 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 6 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

### 1.2.2 System of 2 Linear Difference Equations

We consider the linear dynamics in  $\mathbb{R}^2$  as follows

$$\begin{aligned} x_{t+1} &= ax_t + by_t \\ y_{t+1} &= cx_t + dy_t \end{aligned} \tag{1.5}$$

---

<sup>(3)</sup>Since  $\mathbf{v} = (v_1, v_2)$  is a vector, we just need to assign a value to  $v_2$  (for example, 1) and work out  $v_1$  accordingly.

Since we want a system involving both  $x$  and  $y$ , we assume that  $b, d \neq 0$ . For example

$$\begin{aligned} x_{t+1} &= 0.9x_t - 0.2y_t \\ y_{t+1} &= 0.1x_t + 0.7y_t \end{aligned} \quad (1.6)$$

We can exploit the matrix notation and write it as

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_{t+1} \\ y_{t+1} \end{pmatrix} = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}}_{\mathbf{J}} \begin{pmatrix} x_t \\ y_t \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.7)$$

Yes,  $\mathbf{J}$  is the Jacobian matrix. To characterize the properties of the Jacobian, we need to involve the notion of eigenvalues. But first, let's find the steady state by solving

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{x} &= a\bar{x} + b\bar{y} \\ \bar{y} &= c\bar{x} + d\bar{y} \end{aligned}$$

which can be written as

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{x} &= \frac{b}{1-a}\bar{y}, \\ \bar{y} &= \frac{c}{1-d}\bar{x} \end{aligned}$$

implying that

$$\bar{x} = \frac{bc}{(1-a)(1-d)}\bar{x}$$

Now, since  $b, c \neq 0$ ,  $\frac{bc}{(1-a)(1-d)} \neq 0$ . Assume further that  $a, d \neq 1$ , then the only solution to the above equation is

$$\bar{x} = 0.$$

Thus, the only equilibrium point is  $(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) = (0, 0)$ .

In studying the stability around the steady state, the eigenvalues of a Jacobian matrix provide valuable insights into the behavior of a dynamical system near its equilibrium points. They indicate how nearby trajectories behave over time. If the real parts of the eigenvalues are negative (i.e., the absolute value of the eigenvalues are less than 1), trajectories that start near the equilibrium point will converge towards it, indicating **stability**. If the real parts are positive, trajectories will diverge, leading to instability.

**Theorem 1.2.1.** *Let the eigenvalues of the Jacobian matrix be  $\lambda_1 \neq \lambda_2 \in \mathbb{R}$ , then:*

1. *If  $|\lambda_1| \leq |\lambda_2| < 1$ , then*

$$\text{for all } \begin{pmatrix} x_0 \\ y_0 \end{pmatrix}, \lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \begin{pmatrix} x_t \\ y_t \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

*and the steady state  $(0, 0)$  is **stable** in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ . Any value for  $(x_0, y_0)$  will lead the dynamics to the steady state. The steady state  $(0, 0)$  is said to be a **sink**. Furthermore, assume that  $|\lambda_2| > |\lambda_1|$ .*

- *if  $\lambda_2 > 0$ , the long run dynamics are monotonic*
- *if  $\lambda_2 < 0$ , the long run dynamics are oscillating.*

2. If  $|\lambda_2| \geq |\lambda_1| > 1$ , all trajectories starting from

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_0 \\ y_0 \end{pmatrix} \neq \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

**explode.** The steady state  $(0, 0)$  is **unstable**. It is said to be a **source**.

3. If  $|\lambda_1| < 1 < |\lambda_2|$ , there exists a unique direction along which the dynamics converge to  $(0, 0)$ . This implies that for a given  $x_0$ , there is only one value of  $y_0$  such that the trajectory converges to the steady state. The steady state  $(0, 0)$  is said to be a **saddle point**.

So far, we have assumed that the 2 eigenvalues  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2$  are real and not equal each other. The following analyzes such cases.

### Repeated Eigenvalues

Write them as  $\lambda_1 = \lambda_2 = \lambda$ , then if

1. If  $|\lambda| < 1$ , all trajectories converge to  $(0, 0)$ , which is globally stable in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ .
2. If  $|\lambda| > 1$ , all trajectories starting from  $(x_0, y_0) \neq (0, 0)$  explode and  $(0, 0)$  is unstable.

### Complex Eigenvalues

We can write them as

$$\begin{aligned}\lambda_1 &= \alpha + i\beta, \\ \lambda_2 &= \alpha - i\beta\end{aligned}$$

There are then two possibilities:

1. If  $\alpha^2 + \beta^2 = |\lambda_1|^2 = |\lambda_2|^2 < 1$ , all trajectories converge to  $(0, 0)$ , which is globally stable in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ .
2. If  $\alpha^2 + \beta^2 > 1$ , all trajectories starting from  $(x_0, y_0) \neq (0, 0)$  explode and  $(0, 0)$  is unstable.

**Example 1.2.** Let's work through the stability analysis for the system (1.6).

### Step 1: Equilibrium Points

To find the equilibrium points, we need to solve the equations:

$$x_{t+1} = x_t$$

$$y_{t+1} = y_t$$

For the given system, the equilibrium points are found by setting each equation to its corresponding variable:

$$\begin{aligned}0.9x - 0.2y &= x \\ 0.1x + 0.7y &= y\end{aligned}$$

Solving these equations simultaneously, the equilibrium point is  $(x^*, y^*) = (0, 0)$ .

### Step 2: Jacobian Matrix

The Jacobian matrix is given by:

$$J = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} & \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} \\ \frac{\partial g}{\partial x} & \frac{\partial g}{\partial y} \end{bmatrix}$$

Where  $f$  and  $g$  are the functions defining the system.

For the given system, we have:

$$\begin{aligned} f(x, y) &= 0.9x - 0.2y \\ g(x, y) &= 0.1x + 0.7y \end{aligned}$$

Calculating the partial derivatives, we get:

$$J = \begin{bmatrix} 0.9 & -0.2 \\ 0.1 & 0.7 \end{bmatrix}$$

### Step 3: Eigenvalues and Stability

Evaluate the Jacobian matrix at the equilibrium point  $(0, 0)$ :

$$J^* = \begin{bmatrix} 0.9 & -0.2 \\ 0.1 & 0.7 \end{bmatrix}$$

Calculate the eigenvalues of  $J^*$ . The characteristic equation is given by:

$$\det(J^* - \lambda I) = 0$$

Solving this equation, we find that the eigenvalues are approximately 0.8 and 0.8.

Since both eigenvalues have negative real parts, the equilibrium point  $(0, 0)$  is stable.

In conclusion, the equilibrium point  $(0, 0)$  for the given system is stable due to the negative real parts of the eigenvalues of the Jacobian matrix.

### 1.2.3 System of 2 Nonlinear Difference Equations

We focus on the nonlinear dynamics, as they are the most common in economics.

Consider the linear dynamics in  $\mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$  following (1.3). Given the initial state  $(x_0, y_0)$ . Assume that

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{x} &= f(\bar{x}, \bar{y}), \\ \bar{y} &= g(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) \end{aligned} \tag{1.8}$$

be the steady state  $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$  of the system (1.3). It is locally stable if for any initial value  $(x_0, y_0)$  near enough to  $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$ , the dynamics starting from  $(x_0, y_0)$  converge to  $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$ .

Let us take a first-order Taylor expansion of  $f(\cdot)$  around a steady state:

$$f(x, y) - f(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) \approx f'_x(\bar{x}, \bar{y})(x - \bar{x}) + f'_y(\bar{x}, \bar{y})(y - \bar{y})$$

Similarly for  $g(\cdot)$ :

$$g(x, y) - g(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) \approx g'_x(\bar{x}, \bar{y})(x - \bar{x}) + g'_y(\bar{x}, \bar{y})(y - \bar{y})$$

From (1.3), (1.8), we can write them in matrix form <sup>(4)</sup> as

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_{t+1} - \bar{x} \\ y_{t+1} - \bar{y} \end{pmatrix} = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} f'_x(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) & f'_y(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) \\ g'_x(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) & g'_y(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) \end{pmatrix}}_{\mathbf{J}} \begin{pmatrix} x_t - \bar{x} \\ y_t - \bar{y} \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.9}$$

where, as well all know by now,  $\mathbf{J}$  is the Jacobian matrix. The system has been “linearized” and can be analyzed similarly to the linear case.

---

<sup>(4)</sup>This is called to “linearize” around the steady state

**Theorem 1.2.2.** Let  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2$  be the eigenvalues of the Jacobian matrix  $\mathbf{J}$  evaluated at the steady state  $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$ . Then

1. If  $|\lambda_1| \leq |\lambda_2| < 1$ , the steady state is locally stable. Any initial condition will lead the dynamics to the steady state. The steady state  $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$  is said to be a **sink**.
2. If  $|\lambda_1| \geq |\lambda_2| > 1$ , the steady state is unstable: for any initial condition different from the steady state, the trajectories are locally exploding. The steady state is said to be a **source**.
3. If  $|\lambda_1| < 1 < |\lambda_2|$ , the steady state is a saddle point. For a given initial condition on one variable, there is only one initial value of the other variable such that the trajectory converges to the steady state. Any other value for this variable would lead the trajectory to locally explode.

When the eigenvalues are real and their moduli (absolute value) lie on the same side of 1, the steady state is also called a (stable or unstable) node.

From a practical point of view, it is often easier to use the **trace** ( $\mathbf{T}$ ) and the **determinant** ( $\mathbf{D}$ ) of the Jacobian matrix. The results are summarized as follows.

**Theorem 1.2.3.** We have

$$\mathbf{T} = \text{tr}(\mathbf{J}) = f'_x + g'_y$$

and

$$\mathbf{D} = \det(\mathbf{J}) = f'_x g'_y - f'_y g'_x$$

Then:

1. If  $|1 + \mathbf{D}| < |\mathbf{T}|$ , the steady state is a saddle.
2. If  $|1 + \mathbf{D}| > |\mathbf{T}|$  and  $|\mathbf{D}| < 1$ , the steady state is a sink.
3. If  $|1 + \mathbf{D}| > |\mathbf{T}|$  and  $|\mathbf{D}| > 1$ , the steady state is a source.

This is an important and neat result. After the linearization around the steady state, the LHS of (1.9) becomes the “amount of change” between 2 periods. Naturally, if the change converges toward zero and stays there as stability is guaranteed, it means that the steady-state sustains forever.

### 1.3 Economic Applications

The following exercises are from Sydsæter et al. (2008, p.395–399).

**Ex. 1.5.** Find the solution and equilibrium point. The last is from Shone (2002, p.139)

- (a)  $x_{t+1} = 2x_t + 4, x_0 = 1,$
- (b)  $3x_{t+1} = x_t + 2, x_0 = 2,$
- (c)  $2x_{t+1} + 3x_t + 2 = 0, x_0 = -1,$
- (d)  $x_{t+1} - x_t + 3 = 0, x_0 = 3,$
- (e)  $x_{t+1} = 3.84x_t(1 - x_t), x_0 = 0.1$  (3 cycles, use Python or Excel)

**Ex. 1.6** (Cobweb Model (Kaldor, 1934)). Assume the total cost of raising  $q$  pigs is

$$C(q) = \alpha q + \beta q^2$$

Suppose there are  $N$  identical pig farms. Let the demand function for pigs be

$$D(p) = \gamma - \delta p$$

where  $p$  is the price,  $\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta$  are positive constants. Each farmer behaves competitively and takes price as given to maximize their profit according to

$$\pi(q) = pq - C(q)$$

1. Find the quantity  $q^*$  that maximizes profit.
2. Find the Aggregate Supply  $S(p)$ .
3. Now, suppose it takes 1 period to raise each pig. When choosing the number of pigs to raise for sale at time  $t+1$ , each farmer remembers the price  $p_t$  and expects  $p_{t+1}$  to be the same as  $p_t$ . Thus, aggregate supply at time  $t+1$  is  $S(p_t)$ . Find the equilibrium price satisfying

$$S(p_t) = D(p_{t+1})$$

4. Write solution of  $p_t$  in terms of  $p_0$  and a time path.
5. Find the equilibrium. Analyze its stability. When is it stable? When is it not?

Below are some variations of the cobweb model (Evans and Honkapohja, 2001). For numerical methods and simulation, you can visit [https://python.quantecon.org/re\\_with\\_feedback.html](https://python.quantecon.org/re_with_feedback.html).

**Ex. 1.7** (Lucas (1973)'s model ). Aggregate output

$$q_t = \bar{q} + \pi(p_t - p_t^e) + \zeta_t$$

where  $\pi > 0$ ,  $p_t^e$  is the price expectation. Aggregate demand is

$$m_t + v_t = p_t + q_t$$

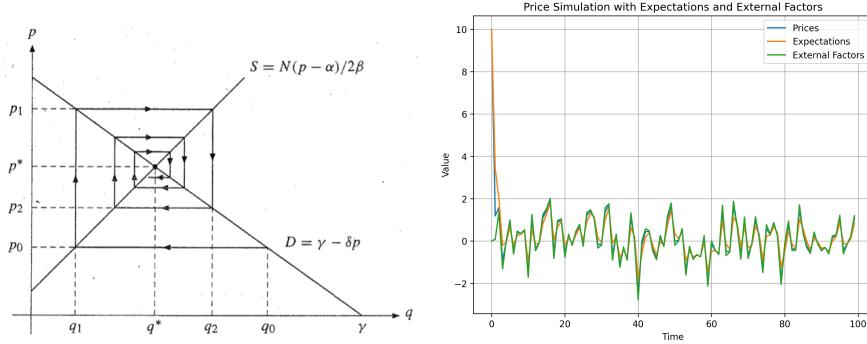
Money supply is random around a constant mean

$$m_t = \bar{m} + u_t$$

where all variables are in log form and  $u_t, v_t, \zeta_t$  are white noise shocks. Can you achieve a reduced form of  $p_t = F(p_t^e)$  <sup>(5)</sup>.

---

<sup>(5)</sup>Ans:  $p_t = (1 + \pi)^{-1}(\bar{m} - \bar{q}) + \pi(1 + \pi)^{-1}p_t^e + (1 - \pi)^{-1}(u_t + v_t - \zeta_t)$



(a) Stable cobweb (Sydsæter et al., 2008)

(b) Inflation expectation

**Fig. 1.4.** The cobweb dynamics

**Ex. 1.8** (Cagan (1956)'s model of hyperinflation). Demand for money depends linearly on expected inflation (the change in prices on the RHS).

$$m_t - p_t = -\psi(p_{t+1}^e - p_t), \quad \psi > 0$$

$m_t, p_t, p_{t+1}^e$  are logs of money supply, price level and expectation of next-period price formed at time  $t$ .  $m_t$ , again, is i.i.d. around a constant mean  $\bar{m}$ .

Solve for  $p_t$  as a function of price expectation  $F(p_{t+1}^e)$ . <sup>(6)</sup>

---

<sup>(6)</sup> Ans:  $p_t = \alpha p_{t+1}^e + \beta m_t$  where  $\alpha = \psi(1 + \psi)^{-1}$ ,  $\beta = (1 + \psi)^{-1}$ .

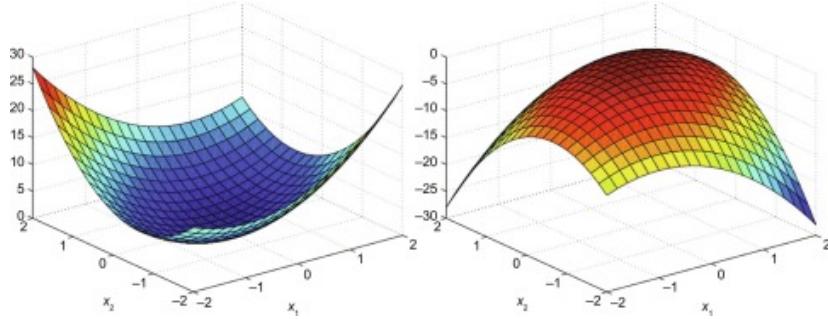
## Chapter 2

# Static Optimization and Economic Modeling

### 2.1 Unconstraint Optimization

Say we want to find the solutions of  $n$  choice variables ( $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$  )

$$\max_{\mathbf{x}} F(\mathbf{x})$$



**Fig. 2.1.** Find the min (left) or max (right).

#### 2.1.1 Necessary Conditions

This condition requires that the solution  $\mathbf{x}^*$  must be a critical point of  $f$ , that is  $f'(\mathbf{x}^*) = 0$ .  $\mathbf{x}^*$  will not be the endpoint of the interval under consideration, which means it lies in the INTERIOR of the domain of  $f$ .

**Theorem 2.1.1.** Let  $F : U \mapsto \mathbb{R}^1$  be a  $C^1$  function defined on a subset  $U$  of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . If  $\mathbf{x}^*$  is a local max or min of  $F$  in  $U$ , and if  $\mathbf{x}^*$  is an interior point of  $U$ , then

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial x_i}(\mathbf{x}^*) = 0 \text{ for } i = 1, \dots, n$$

Basically, the FOCs to every choice variable must be 0. We can write the condition in the form of Jacobian

$$DF(\mathbf{x}^*) = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial F}{\partial x_1}(\mathbf{x}^*) & \dots & \frac{\partial F}{\partial x_n}(\mathbf{x}^*) \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{0}$$

The solution  $\mathbf{x}^* \neq 0$  for this problem is called a “non-trivial solution”. Otherwise, if  $\mathbf{x}^* = 0$ , then it is called a “trivial” or corner solution, which is usually uninteresting in economics.

### 2.1.2 Sufficient Conditions

We need to use a condition on the second derivatives of  $F$  to determine whether the critical point is a max or a min. A  $C^2$  function of  $n$  variables has  $n^2$  second-order partial derivatives at each point in its domain. We combine them into a  $n \times n$  matrix called the **Hessian** of  $F$

$$D^2F(\mathbf{x}^*) = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial^2 F}{\partial x_1^2}(\mathbf{x}^*) & \dots & \frac{\partial^2 F}{\partial x_1 \partial x_n}(\mathbf{x}^*) \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \frac{\partial^2 F}{\partial x_n \partial x_1}(\mathbf{x}^*) & \dots & \frac{\partial^2 F}{\partial x_n^2}(\mathbf{x}^*) \end{pmatrix}$$

The Hessian is always a symmetric matrix. Whether the critical point is a min or max or neither depends on the definiteness of the Hessian matrix at that point.

**Theorem 2.1.2.** *Let  $F : U \mapsto \mathbb{R}^1$  be a  $C^2$  function whose domain is an open set  $U$  in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . Suppose that  $\mathbf{x}^*$  is a critical point of  $F$ , then*

1. *If the Hessian  $D^2F(\mathbf{x}^*)$  is a NEGATIVE DEFINITE symmetric matrix, then  $\mathbf{x}^*$  is a strict LOCAL MAX of  $F$ ,*
2. *If the Hessian  $D^2F(\mathbf{x}^*)$  is a POSITIVE DEFINITE symmetric matrix, then  $\mathbf{x}^*$  is a strict LOCAL MIN of  $F$ ,*
3. *If the Hessian  $D^2F(\mathbf{x}^*)$  is INDEFINITE, then  $\mathbf{x}^*$  is neither a local max nor a local min of  $F$ .*

In general, there are two methods to test for definiteness.

#### (1) The Signs of the Leading Minors

**Theorem 2.1.3** (Sufficient Conditions for a MAX). *Let  $F : U \mapsto \mathbb{R}^1$  be a  $C^2$  function whose domain is an open set  $U$  in  $\mathbb{R}^1$ . Suppose that*

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial x_i}(\mathbf{x}^*) = 0 \text{ for } i = 1, \dots, n$$

*and that the  $n$  leading principal minors of  $D^2F(\mathbf{x}^*)$  alternate in sign*

$$|F''_{x_1 x_1}| < 0, \begin{vmatrix} F''_{x_1 x_1} & F''_{x_2 x_1} \\ F''_{x_1 x_2} & F''_{x_2 x_2} \end{vmatrix} > 0, \begin{vmatrix} F_{x_1 x_1} & F_{x_2 x_1} & F_{x_3 x_1} \\ F_{x_1 x_2} & F_{x_2 x_2} & F_{x_3 x_2} \\ F_{x_1 x_3} & F_{x_2 x_3} & F_{x_3 x_3} \end{vmatrix} < 0, \dots$$

*at  $\mathbf{x}^*$ . Then  $\mathbf{x}^*$  is a strict local max of  $F$ .*

**Theorem 2.1.4** (Sufficient Conditions for a MIN). *Let  $F : U \mapsto \mathbb{R}^1$  be a  $C^2$  function whose domain is an open set  $U$  in  $\mathbb{R}^1$ . Suppose that*

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial x_i}(\mathbf{x}^*) = 0 \text{ for } i = 1, \dots, n$$

*and that the  $n$  leading principal minors of  $D^2F(\mathbf{x}^*)$  all positive*

$$|F_{x_1 \ x_1}| > 0, \begin{vmatrix} F_{x_1 \ x_1} & F_{x_2 \ x_1} \\ F_{x_1 \ x_2} & F_{x_2 \ x_2} \end{vmatrix} > 0, \begin{vmatrix} F_{x_1 \ x_1} & F_{x_2 \ x_1} & F_{x_3 \ x_1} \\ F_{x_1 \ x_2} & F_{x_2 \ x_2} & F_{x_3 \ x_2} \\ F_{x_1 \ x_3} & F_{x_2 \ x_3} & F_{x_3 \ x_3} \end{vmatrix} > 0, \dots$$

*at  $\mathbf{x}^*$ . Then  $\mathbf{x}^*$  is a strict local min of  $F$ .*

$$Q = \begin{pmatrix} \Delta_1 & \Delta_2 & \Delta_3 & \dots & \Delta_n \\ \left( \begin{array}{ccccc} q_{11} & q_{12} & q_{13} & \cdots & q_{1n} \\ q_{21} & q_{22} & q_{23} & & \\ q_{31} & q_{32} & q_{33} & & \\ \vdots & & & \ddots & \\ q_{n1} & & \cdots & & q_{nn} \end{array} \right) \end{pmatrix}$$

Fig. 2.2. Principal Minors

## (2) The Signs of the Eigenvalues

Another way is to evaluate the Eigenvalues of the Hessian at critical points.

**Theorem 2.1.5** (Eigenvalues Test for Sufficient Conditions). *If the Hessian at a given point has **all positive eigenvalues**, it is said to be positive-definite, meaning the function is **concave up (convex)** at that point. If all the eigenvalues are **negative**, it is said to be a negative-definite, equivalent to **concave down**.*

To find the eigenvalues  $\lambda$  of a matrix  $\mathbf{A}$ , solve the following

$$\det(\mathbf{A} - \lambda \mathbf{I}) = 0$$

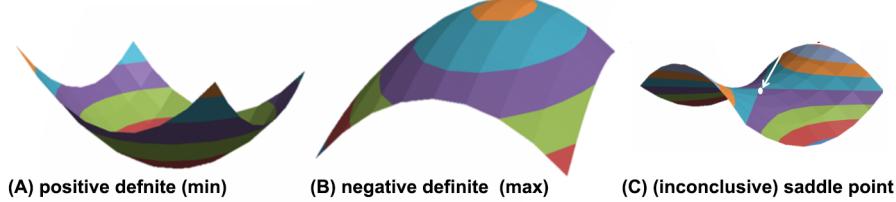


Fig. 2.3. The definiteness of the Hessian matrix

Intuitively, a negative definite Hessian matrix at the optimal point suggests that the objective function is concave in the vicinity of that point. This means that the function curves downward and resembles a bowl-like shape around the optimal point. In other

words, if you move a little bit away from the optimal point in any direction, the function value will decrease. This curvature indicates that you are on the highest point in that particular region, and there is no other point nearby that can provide a higher value for the function. Mathematically, a matrix is negative definite if all its eigenvalues are negative. In the context of the Hessian matrix, the negative eigenvalues indicate that the curvature of the function in the corresponding directions is downward, which aligns with the idea of concavity.

### 2.1.3 Examples

**Example 2.1** (Optimization). Suppose

$$f(x, y) = x^4 + y^2 - xy$$

The critical point is found by

$$\begin{aligned} (x) : \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} &= 4x^3 - y = 0 \iff y = 4x^3, \\ (y) : \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} &= 2y - x = 0 \iff y = x/2. \end{aligned}$$

Solving for  $x$  yields the following critical points

$$(x^*, y^*) = (0, 0), \left(\frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}, \frac{1}{4\sqrt{2}}\right), \left(-\frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}, -\frac{1}{4\sqrt{2}}\right)$$

To verify the extremum, we evaluate the Hessian matrix at the critical points

$$H = \begin{pmatrix} 12x^2 & -1 \\ -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

The first principal minor is  $12x^2$ . The second principal minor is  $H$  itself where

$$|H| = 24x^2 - 1$$

Thus, we conclude that  $(0, 0)$  is a saddle point.

The other 2 critical points  $\left(\frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}, \frac{1}{4\sqrt{2}}\right)$ ,  $\left(-\frac{1}{2\sqrt{2}}, -\frac{1}{4\sqrt{2}}\right)$  are minima.

**Example 2.2.** Consider the maximization problem

$$\max f(x) = -x^2 + 2ax + 4a^2$$

What is the effect of an increase in  $a$  on the maximal value of  $f(x, a)$ ?

First, Find the critical point. Taking FOC yields  $x^* = a$

1. (Direct Solution) Inserting to the objective function  $f(a) = 5a^2$  and so the effect of  $a$  on  $f$  is  $df/da = 10a$ .
2. (Envelop Theorem)

$$f'(a) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial a} = 2x + 8a$$

evaluate at  $x = a$  also yields  $10a$ .

### 2.1.4 Economic Applications

**Ex. 2.1.** Find the optimal solution for

- (a)  $\min_x x^2 - 4x + 7$ ,
- (b)  $\max_x \ln(x+1)$  for  $x \geq 0$
- (c)  $\max_x x^3 - 6x^2 + 9x$  for  $x \in [-1, 4]$
- (d)  $\max_{x,y} f(x, y) = -2x^2 - 3y^2 + 4xy$
- (e)  $\min_{x,y,z} f(x, y, z) = x^2 + 6xy + y^2 - 3yz + 4z^2 - 10x - 5y - 21z$ .

**Ex. 2.2.** Find the eigenvalues and evaluate them at given points, and determine whether the matrix is negative-definite, positive-definite, or indefinite.

- (a)  $\begin{pmatrix} 12x^2 & -1 \\ -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$  at  $(3, 1)$ ,
- (b)  $\begin{pmatrix} 6x & 0 \\ 0 & 6y \end{pmatrix}$  at  $(-1, 2)$ ,
- (c)  $\begin{pmatrix} -2y^2 & -4xy \\ -4xy & -2x^2 \end{pmatrix}$  at  $(1, -1)$  and  $(1, 0)$

**Ex. 2.3.** Endogenous Fertility ([de la Croix, 2012](#)) p.12.

$$\max_{s_t, n_t} \ln(w(1 - \phi n_t) - s_t) + \beta \ln((1 + r)s_t) + \gamma \ln(n_t)$$

where  $n$  is fertility decision,  $\phi$  is the time-cost of raising children,  $s, w, r$  are savings, wage rate, and interest rate.

1. Find the optimal fertility decision.
2. Add a good cost of childcare per child (say  $\theta > 0$ ) and a parameter  $\nu > 0$  measuring the joy of being single, will it change the fertility decision? When will people decide to not have kids ( $n = 0$ )?

**Ex. 2.4.** Endogenous Fertility with Bequest ([de la Croix, 2012](#)) p.189.

$$\max_{l_t, n_t, b_t} \ln((1 - l_t - \phi N_t^\sigma n_t)k_t - n_t b_t) + \varphi \ln(l_t) + \gamma \ln(n_t k_{t+1})$$

where  $l_t, n_t, b_t$  are leisure, fertility, and educational bequests. The idea is that population size asserts a negative externality on having children.

Productive assets accumulate according to

$$k_{t+1} = \mu b_t^\eta k_t^\tau$$

1. Write the first-order conditions.
2. Find the optimal values  $l^*, n^*, b^*$ .

**Ex. 2.5.** Principal-Agent problem (Varian, 1992), p.453

The Agent's problem is

$$\max_a \underbrace{\delta + \gamma a}_{\text{incentive payment}} - \underbrace{\frac{\gamma^2 r}{2} \sigma^2}_{\text{risk}} - \underbrace{c(a)}_{\text{cost}}$$

where  $a$  is the agent's effort,  $\sigma^2$  measures risk. (if  $\sigma^2 = 0$ , there is no risk, if it is positive, there is a risk) and a convex function  $c(a)$  that measures cost associated with effort spent.

The principal is risk-neutral. He receives income of 1 per unit of effort spent by the agent, but he has to pay back the agent some incentives that cost  $\gamma a + \delta$ . The Principal's problem is

$$\max_{\delta, \gamma} (1 - \gamma)a - \delta$$

where  $\delta + \gamma a - \frac{\gamma^2 r}{2} \sigma^2 - c(a) = w$  ( $w > \delta$ ). The incentive payment is contractualized by

$$s = \delta + \gamma a.$$

1. Solve the Agent's problem to obtain  $a$
2. For the Principal's problem, first, extract  $\delta$  as a function of  $\gamma, a$ . Then, replace it back to the objective function, use the results from 1. and solve for  $a$ .
3. Assume  $c(a) = 0.5a^2$ . Derive the explicit solution.
4. What happens to  $\gamma$  and the contract payment  $s$  under no-risk and risky scenario?

**Ex. 2.6** (Maximum Likelihood Estimation (MLE)). Application in Statistical Inference.

1. (1 parameter) Suppose a sample  $x_1, \dots, x_n$  is modeled by a **Poisson** distribution with parameter denoted by  $\lambda$ , so that

$$f_X(x|\lambda) = \frac{\lambda^x}{x!} e^{-\lambda}$$

for some  $\lambda > 0$ . Estimate  $\lambda$  by MLE.

2. The **Gaussian** probability density function of a normally distributed i.i.d  $N(\mu, \sigma^2)$

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}} \exp\left[-\left(\frac{x-\mu}{\sigma\sqrt{2}}\right)^2\right]$$

In this problem, the probability density function is characterized by 2 parameters  $\sigma^2$  and  $\mu$ . Use MLE to find them.

**Hint:** steps to estimate parameters  $\theta$  using MLE.

1. Write the likelihood function

$$L_n(\theta) = \prod_{i=1}^n f(X_i|\theta)$$

2. Take logs to obtain log-likelihood function

$$\ell_n(\theta) = \log L_n(\theta) = \log(f(X_1|\theta)) + \dots + \log(f(X_n|\theta)) = \sum_{i=1}^n \log f(X_i|\theta)$$

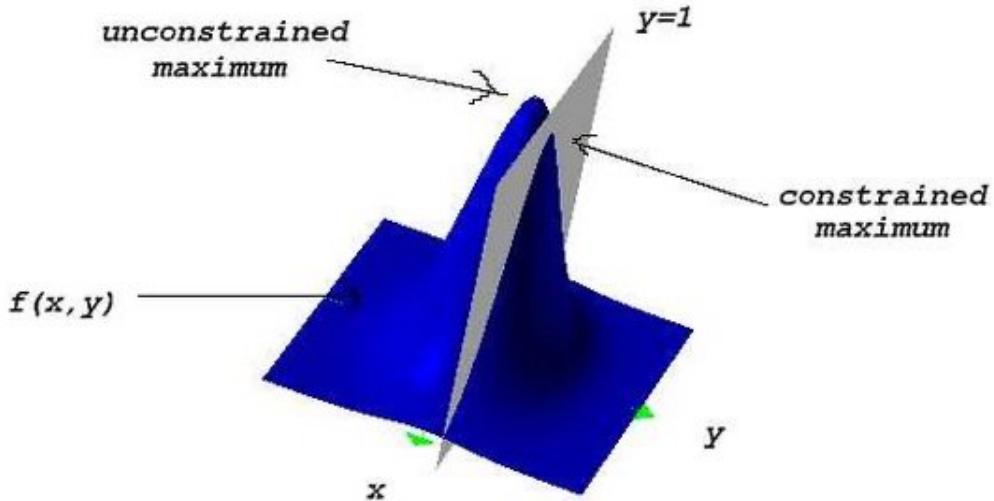
3. Find the estimator that maximizes this function

$$\hat{\theta} = \arg \max \ell_n(\theta)$$

## 2.2 Constraint Optimization

Let us consider an optimization problem for  $n$  variables with  $k$  constraints s.t.

$$\begin{aligned} & \max_{\mathbf{x}} (\min) f(\underbrace{\mathbf{x}_1, \dots, \mathbf{x}_n}_{\mathbf{x}}) \\ & \text{s.t. } h_i(\mathbf{x}) = c_i \quad \text{for } i = 1, \dots, k. \end{aligned}$$



**Fig. 2.4.** An example of Constraint Optimization

### 2.2.1 Necessary First-order Conditions

Assume that NDQC is satisfied. There will be  $k$  Lagrangian multipliers  $\lambda_i$  for  $i = 1, \dots, k$ . The Lagrangian is

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{x}, \lambda_i) = f(\mathbf{x}) - \sum_{i=1}^k \lambda_i (h_i(\mathbf{x}) - c_i)$$

As usual, the FOC is just

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial x_i} = 0 \quad \text{for } i = 1, \dots, n$$

Let us show what it means in a problem of 1 function of 2 variables.

**Theorem 2.2.1.** Let  $f$  and  $h$  be  $C^1$  functions of 2 variables. Suppose that  $\mathbf{x}^* = (x_1^*, x_2^*)$  is a solution of the problem

$$\begin{aligned} & \max f(x_1, x_2) \\ & \text{s.t. } h(x_1, x_2) = c \end{aligned}$$

Suppose further that  $(x_1^*, x_2^*)$  is not a critical point of  $h$ . Then, there is a real number  $\lambda^*$  such that  $(x_1^*, x_2^*, \lambda^*)$  is a critical point of the Lagrangian function

$$\mathcal{L}(x_1, x_2, \lambda) \equiv f(x_1, x_2) - \lambda[h(x_1, x_2) - c].$$

In other words, at  $(x_1^*, x_2^*, \lambda^*)$  we can obtain the First-order conditions

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial x_1} = \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial x_2} = \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \lambda} = 0.$$

or

$$\nabla \mathcal{L}(x_1, x_2, \lambda) = 0$$

**Example 2.3.** The problem is

$$\begin{aligned} \max_{x,y} f(x,y) &= xy \\ \text{s.t. } 2x + y &= 100 \end{aligned}$$

### Method 1: Lagrangian Method

The Lagrangian is

$$\mathcal{L} = xy - \lambda(2x + y - 100)$$

The FOCs:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}'_x &= y - 2\lambda = 0, \\ \mathcal{L}'_y &= x - \lambda = 0, \\ \mathcal{L}'_\lambda &= 2x + y - 100 = 0, \end{aligned}$$

which yields the solution  $(x^*, y^*) = (25, 50)$ .

### Method 2: Substitution Method or “Naive” Method

We can turn the constrained optimization problem into an unconstrained problem. From the constraint, we have  $y = 100 - x$ , the problem becomes

$$\max_x x(100 - 2x)$$

The FOC is

$$100 - 4x = 0,$$

which also gives  $x^* = 25, y^* = 50$ .

### 2.2.2 Sufficient Conditions

For sufficient conditions, we need to use the notion of Bordered Hessian Matrix. The construction of such a matrix is

$$H = \left( \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 0 & \dots & 0 & B_{11} & \dots & B_{1n} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \dots & 0 & B_{m1} & \dots & B_{mn} \\ \hline B_{11} & \dots & B_{m1} & a_{11} & \dots & a_{1n} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ B_{1n} & \dots & B_{mn} & a_{1n} & \dots & a_{nn} \end{array} \right)$$

in short, it looks like this

$$H = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \mathbf{B} \\ \mathbf{B}^T & \mathbf{L} \end{pmatrix}$$

where  $\mathbf{B}$  is the matrix of derivatives of constraints  $h_i$  wrt to  $\mathbf{x}$ , and  $\mathbf{L}$  is the matrix of second-order derivatives of the Lagrangian  $\mathcal{L}$  wrt to  $\mathbf{x}$ .

In our case, it looks like this

$$H = \left( \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 0 & \dots & 0 & \frac{\partial h_1}{\partial x_1} & \dots & \frac{\partial h_1}{\partial x_n} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \dots & 0 & \frac{\partial h_k}{\partial x_1} & \dots & \frac{\partial h_k}{\partial x_n} \\ \hline \frac{\partial h_1}{\partial x_1} & \dots & \frac{\partial h_k}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial^2 \mathcal{L}}{\partial x_1^2} & \dots & \frac{\partial^2 \mathcal{L}}{\partial x_1 \partial x_n} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \frac{\partial h_1}{\partial x_n} & \dots & \frac{\partial h_k}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial^2 \mathcal{L}}{\partial x_n \partial x_1} & \dots & \frac{\partial^2 \mathcal{L}}{\partial x_n^2} \end{array} \right)$$

This  $(k+n) \times (k+n)$  matrix has  $k+n$  leading principal minors (the biggest one is  $H$  itself). The first  $m$  matrices  $H_1, \dots, H_k$  are zero matrices. The next  $k-1$  matrices  $H_{k+1}, \dots, H_{2k-1}$  have zero determinant.

The determinant of the next minor  $H_{2k}$  is  $\pm \det(H')^2$  where  $H'$  is the upper  $k \times k$  minor of  $H$  after block of zeros, so  $\det H_{2k}$  does not contain information about  $f$ .

And only the determinants of the last  $n-k$  leading principal minors

$$H_{2k+1}, H_{2k+2}, \dots, H_{2k+(n-k)=k+n} \equiv H$$

carry information about both, the objective function  $f$  and the constraints  $h_i$ . Exactly these minors are essential for the following sufficient condition for constraint optimization.

**Theorem 2.2.2** (Constraint SOC). *Suppose  $\mathbf{x}^*$  satisfies the FOCs.*

1. *For the bordered Hessian matrix  $H$ , the last  $n-k$  leading principal minors*

$$H_{2k+1}, H_{2k+2}, \dots, H_{2k+(n-k)=k+n} \equiv H$$

*evaluated at the critical point ALTERNATE in signs where the last minor  $H_{n+k} \equiv H$  has the sign as  $(-1)^n$ , then  $\mathbf{x}^*$  is a LOCAL MAX.*

2. *For the bordered Hessian matrix  $H$ , the last  $n-k$  leading principal minors*

$$H_{2k+1}, H_{2k+2}, \dots, H_{2k+(n-k)=k+n} \equiv H$$

*evaluated at the critical point have the SAME sign where the last minor  $H_{n+k} \equiv H$  has the sign as  $(-1)^k$ , then  $\mathbf{x}^*$  is a LOCAL MIN.*

which can be summarized as

	$H_{2k+1}$	$H_{2k+2}$	$\dots$	$H_{k+n-1}$	$H_{k+n} \equiv H$
max	$(-1)^{k+1}$	$(-1)^{k+2}$	$\dots$	$(-1)^{n-1}$	$(-1)^n$
min	$(-1)^k$	$(-1)^k$	$\dots$	$(-1)^k$	$(-1)^k$

We provide here only the sufficient conditions for a problem of **2 variables and 1 constraint**, which is the most common.

**Theorem 2.2.3.** Let  $f, h$  be  $C^2$  functions on  $\mathbb{R}^2$ . Consider the problem

$$\max_{x,y} f(x, y) \quad \text{s.t. } h(x, y) = c \quad \text{for } c \in C_h \text{ (constraint set)}$$

The Lagrangian is

$$\mathcal{L}(x, y, \lambda) = f(x, y) - \lambda(h(x, y) - c)$$

Suppose that  $(x^*, y^*, \lambda^*)$  satisfies the following FOCs

$$\mathcal{L}'_x = \mathcal{L}'_y = \mathcal{L}'_\lambda = 0 \quad \text{at } (x^*, y^*, \lambda^*)$$

and the bordered Hessian matrix is

$$H = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \frac{\partial h}{\partial x} & \frac{\partial h}{\partial y} \\ \frac{\partial h}{\partial x} & \frac{\partial^2 \mathcal{L}}{\partial x^2} & \frac{\partial^2 \mathcal{L}}{\partial x \partial y} \\ \frac{\partial h}{\partial y} & \frac{\partial^2 \mathcal{L}}{\partial y \partial x} & \frac{\partial^2 \mathcal{L}}{\partial y^2} \end{pmatrix}$$

1. if  $\det(H) > 0$  at  $(x^*, y^*)$ , then  $(x^*, y^*)$  is the local MAX of  $f$  on  $C_h$ .
2. if  $\det(H) < 0$  at  $(x^*, y^*)$ , then  $(x^*, y^*)$  is the local MIN of  $f$  on  $C_h$ .

### 2.2.3 Examples

**Example 2.4** (1 objective function of 2 variables and 1 constraint). Find the extremum of

$$\begin{aligned} F(x, y) &= xy \\ \text{s.t. } h(x, y) &= x + y = 6. \end{aligned}$$

The Lagrangian is

$$L(x, y) = xy - \lambda(x + y - 6)$$

The FOCs are

$$\begin{aligned} (x) : \frac{\partial L}{\partial x} &= y - \lambda = 0, \\ (y) : \frac{\partial L}{\partial y} &= x - \lambda = 0, \\ (\lambda) : \frac{\partial L}{\partial \lambda} &= x + y - 6 = 0, \end{aligned}$$

which gives

$$x^* = y^* = 3, \quad \lambda = 3$$

To tell the nature of its extremum, we test the second-order conditions. The bordered Hessian is

$$H = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

We have  $n = 2, k = 1$  so we have to check the  $n - k = 1$  last leading principal minors, a.k.a,  $H$  itself. Calculation shows that  $\det H = 2 > 0$  has the same sign with  $(-1)^n = (-1)^2 > 0$  so our critical point is a MAX.

**Example 2.5** (1 objective function of 2 variables and 2 constraint). Find the extremum of

$$\begin{aligned} F(x, y, z) &= x^2 + y^2 + z^2 \\ \text{s.t. } h_1(x, y, z) &= 3x + y + z = 5, \\ h_2(x, y, z) &= x + y + z = 1 \end{aligned}$$

The Lagrangian is

$$L(x, y) = x^2 + y^2 + z^2 - \lambda_1(3x + y + z - 5) - \lambda_2(x + y + z - 1)$$

The FOCs are

$$\begin{aligned} (x) : \frac{\partial L}{\partial x} &= 2x - 3\lambda_1 - \lambda_2 = 0, \\ (y) : \frac{\partial L}{\partial y} &= 2y - \lambda_1 - \lambda_2 = 0, \\ (z) : \frac{\partial L}{\partial z} &= 2z - \lambda_1 - \lambda_2 = 0, \\ (\lambda_1) : \frac{\partial L}{\partial \lambda_1} &= 3x + y + z - 5 = 0, \\ (\lambda_2) : \frac{\partial L}{\partial \lambda_2} &= x + y + z - 1 = 0 \end{aligned}$$

which gives

$$x^* = 2, \quad y^* = -1/2, \quad z^* = -1/2, \quad \lambda_1 = 5/2, \quad \lambda_2 = -7/2$$

To tell the nature of its extremum, we test the second-order conditions. The bordered Hessian is

$$H = \left( \begin{array}{cc|ccc} 0 & 0 & 3 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ \hline 3 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 2 \end{array} \right)$$

We have  $n = 3, k = 2$  so we have to check the  $n - k = 1$  last leading principal minors, a.k.a,  $H$  itself. Calculation shows that  $\det H = 16 > 0$  has the same sign with  $(-1)^k = (-1)^2 > 0$  so our critical point is a MIN.

## 2.2.4 Economic Applications

**Ex. 2.7.** Find the extremum, then verify it is either max or min.

- |                             |     |                                |
|-----------------------------|-----|--------------------------------|
| (a) $f(x, y) = 7 - y - x^2$ | s.t | $h(x, y) = x + y = 0;$         |
| (b) $f(x, y) = x(y + 4)$    | s.t | $h(x, y) = x + y = 8;$         |
| (c) $x_1^2 + x_2^2 + x_3^2$ | s.t | $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 = 1;$         |
| (d) $yz + xz$               | s.t | $y^2 + z^2 = 1, \quad xz = 3.$ |

**Ex. 2.8** (Beckerian trade-off). A parent's problem is

$$\begin{aligned} \max_{c_t, d_{t+1}, n_t, e_t} & \ln(c_t) + \beta \ln(d_{t+1}) + \gamma \ln(\Pi_t n_t) \\ \text{s.t. } & c_t + s_t + e_t n_t = (1 - \phi n_t) w_t, \\ & d_{t+1} = (1 + r_{t+1}) s_t, \\ & \Pi_t = (\theta + e_t)^\eta \end{aligned}$$

where  $c, d, s, n, e$  are consumption when young, consumption when old, saving, number of children, and children's education. The parameters  $\beta, \gamma, \phi, \theta, \eta \in (0, 1)$ . This problem is a simplified version of the model in [de la Croix \(2012\)](#), p.22.

1. Find the optimal solutions. When will  $e_t = 0$ ?, then, what happens to  $n_t$ ?
2. Find  $\partial n / \partial w, \partial e / \partial w$ . Is there a trade-off between children's quantity and quality?

**Ex. 2.9** (Renewable Resources). Section 9.2 of [Farmer and Bednar-Friedl \(2010\)](#) (p.120). A country has a stock of renewable resource  $R_t$  such that

$$R_{t+1} = R_t + g(R_t) - X_t$$

where  $g(R_t)$  is the rate of regeneration, while  $X_t$  is harvested stock (think of fish). We can assume a simple regenerate form

$$g(R_t) = \delta R_t - \gamma R_t^2 \text{ where } \delta > 1, \gamma < 1$$

Household's budget constraint when young is

$$c_t + k_{t+1} + p_t R_t = q_t X_t + w_t$$

LHS: expenses, including hoarding renewable resources. LHS: harvest then sell + wage. When old, his constraint is

$$d_{t+1} = (1 + r) k_{t+1} + p_{t+1} R_{t+1}$$

Household's problem is

$$\max_{c_t, d_{t+1}, R_t} \ln(c_t) + \beta \ln(d_{t+1})$$

Find the optimal solutions by forming the Lagrangian and take the FOC wrt all the choice variables.

**Ex. 2.10** (New Technology). From [Le-Van and Nguyen-Huu \(2020\)](#). Without technology, a country solves

$$\begin{aligned} & \max \log(c_0) + \beta \log(c_1), \\ & \text{s.t. } c_0 + k_1 = f(k_0), \\ & \quad c_1 = f(k_1) \end{aligned}$$

If she invests in new technology, she solves

$$\begin{aligned} & \max \log(c_0) + \beta \log(c_1), \\ & \text{s.t. } c_0 + s_0 = f(k_0), \\ & \quad s_0 = k_1 + \lambda k_e \\ & \quad c_1 = h(k_e) f(k_1). \end{aligned}$$

Equation (2) means capital is used to save and make New Tech.

Let us assume  $f(k) = \gamma k, h(x) = ax + 1$ .

1. Under which condition does the country invest in new technology?
2. Under what condition, investing in the New Technology is better?

## 2.3 Constraint Inequality Optimization

### 2.3.1 KKT First-order Conditions for MAX

In this branch of problems, the constraint has inequality signs.

$$\max f(x, y) \text{ s.t. } g(x, y) \leq c.$$

We solve this problem by employing the cookbook method called KKT conditions (Karush-Kuhn-Tucker).

**Theorem 2.3.1** (The KKT Conditions for MAX). *Suppose we have 2 choice variables and 1 inequality constraint.*

$$\max f(x, y) \text{ s.t. } g(x, y) \leq c$$

1. Construct the Lagrangian

$$\mathcal{L}(x, y) = f(x, y) - \lambda(g(x, y) - c)$$

2. FOCs

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}'_x &= f'_x - \lambda g'_x = 0, \\ \mathcal{L}'_y &= f'_y - \lambda g'_y = 0, \\ \lambda \cdot (g(x, y) - c) &= 0, \\ \lambda &\geq 0, \\ g(x, y) &\leq c \end{aligned}$$

3. Complimentary slackness condition

$$\lambda > 0, \text{ the constraint binds so that } g(x, y) = c$$

$$\lambda = 0, \text{ the constraint does not bind so that } g(x, y) < c$$

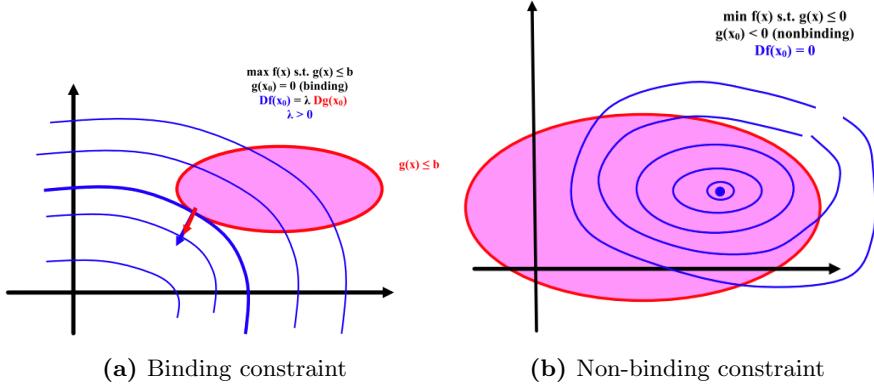
4. For a minimum problem, the FOCs are the same, except that  $\lambda \leq 0$ .

The two inequalities  $\lambda \geq 0$  and  $g(x, y) \leq c$  are complementary in the sense that at most one can be “slack” – that is, at most one can hold with inequality. Equivalently, at least one must be an equality. Failure to observe that it is impossible to have both  $\lambda = 0$  and  $g(x, y) = c$  in the complementary slackness condition is the most common error when solving nonlinear programming problems.

### 2.3.2 KKT First-order Conditions for MIN

For a minimization problem, you have 3 options

1. **Flip the sign of the objective function**, then we will turn a Minimization problem into a Maximization problem, and its FOCs follow suit.
2. Keep the constraints as is (where all constraints are  $\leq$ ), and the FOCs are the same as the MAXIMIZATION problem **except that  $\lambda \leq 0$** .
3. Flip the **signs of the constraints so that they have the form  $\geq$** , then the FOCs are the same as the MAXIMIZATION problem where  $\lambda \geq 0$ .



**Fig. 2.5.** Constraint binding and non-binding cases

It is easier to follow the last option.

### Example 2.6.

$$\begin{aligned} \min f(x, y) &= 2y - x^2 \\ \text{s.t. } &x^2 + y^2 \leq 1 \end{aligned}$$

Rewrite the problem as

$$\begin{aligned} \min f(x, y) &= 2y - x^2 \\ \text{s.t. } &-x^2 - y^2 \geq -1 \end{aligned}$$

The Lagrangian is

$$L(x, y, \lambda) = 2y - x^2 - \lambda(-x^2 - y^2 + 1)$$

FOCs:

- (i)  $\frac{\partial L}{\partial x} = 0 \iff -2x + 2\lambda x = 0$
- (ii)  $\frac{\partial L}{\partial y} = 0 \iff 2 + 2\lambda y = 0$
- (iii)  $\lambda \cdot (-x^2 - y^2 + 1) = 0,$
- (iv)  $\lambda \geq 0$  (if  $\lambda > 0$ , constraint binds).

From (i), (ii), we can derive  $\lambda = 1, y = -1$ . Since  $\lambda > 0$ , the constraint binds and we have  $x^2 + y^2 = 1$ . Since  $y = -1$ , we have  $x = 0$ , as the optimum.

### 2.3.3 Multiple Inequality Constraints

Consider an optimization problem of  $n$  choice variables and  $m$  inequality constraints

$$\begin{aligned} \max f &\underbrace{(x_1, \dots, x_n)}_{\mathbf{x}} && (2.1) \\ \text{s.t. } &g_1(\mathbf{x}) \leq c_1, \\ &\dots, \\ &g_m(\mathbf{x}) \leq c_m \end{aligned}$$

**Theorem 2.3.2** (KKT Formulation). *Steps in solving the problem (2.1)*

1. Write down the Lagrangian

$$\mathcal{L}(\mathbf{x}) = f(\mathbf{x}) - \sum_{j=1}^m \lambda_j(g_j(\mathbf{x}) - c_j)$$

2. FOCs:

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial x_i} = 0,$$

for each  $i = 1, \dots, n$ .

3. Complementary slackness

$$\lambda_j \geq 0, g_j(\mathbf{x}) = c_j \text{ or } \lambda_j = 0, g_j(\mathbf{x}) < c_j$$

for  $j = 1, \dots, m$ . Can also be summarized as

$$\lambda_j \cdot g_j(\mathbf{x}) = 0.$$

4. Find all  $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$  associated with their  $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_m$  that satisfy FOCs and the complementary slackness. These are the solution candidates, and at least 1 of them solves the problem if it has a solution.

**Example 2.7.** The problem is

$$\begin{aligned} & \max x + 3y - 4e^{-x-y} \\ & \text{s.t. } \begin{cases} 2-x \geq 2y \\ x-1 \leq -y \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

Write the problem as

$$\begin{aligned} & \max x + 3y - 4e^{-x-y} \\ & \text{s.t. } \begin{cases} x+2y \leq 2 \\ x-1 \leq -y \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

The Lagrangian is

$$\mathcal{L}(x, y) = x + 3y - 4e^{-x-y} - \lambda_1(x + 2y - 2) - \lambda_2(x + y - 1)$$

KKT conditions

- (i)  $\mathcal{L}'_x = 1 + 4e^{-x-y} - \lambda_1 - \lambda_2 = 0$ ,
- (ii)  $\mathcal{L}'_y = 3 + 4e^{-x-y} - 2\lambda_1 - \lambda_2 = 0$ ,
- $\lambda_1 \cdot (x + 2y - 2) = 0$ ,
- $\lambda_2 \cdot (x + y - 1) = 0$ ,
- (iii)  $\lambda_1 \geq 0$  ( $\lambda_1 = 0 \iff x + 2y < 2$ ),
- (iv)  $\lambda_2 \geq 0$  ( $\lambda_2 = 0 \iff x + y < 1$ )

Since  $\mathcal{L}$  is concave, the KKT conditions are both necessary and sufficient for optimality.

From (ii), (i), we get  $\lambda_1 = 2 > 0$ , thus making (iii) binds such that  $x + 2y = 2$ . Suppose  $\lambda_2 = 0$ , there is a contradiction. Suppose  $\lambda_2 > 0$ , from (iv) we deduce  $x+y = 1$ . Using (i) and (ii), we can find  $\lambda_2 = e^{-1}(4-e) > 0$ . Thus, the solution is

$$(x^*, y^*, \lambda_1, \lambda_2) = (0, 1, 2, e^{-1}(4-e))$$

### 2.3.4 Nonnegativity Constraints

Most oftentimes, in economics, we want to restrict the choice variables to take nonnegative values.

**Theorem 2.3.3** (Reduced KKT conditions for Nonnegativity). *Consider the problem*

$$\begin{aligned} & \max f(x, y) \\ & \text{s.t. } g(x, y) \leq c, \\ & \quad x \geq 0, \\ & \quad y \geq 0 \end{aligned}$$

Rewrite the problem to

$$\begin{aligned} & \max f(x, y) \\ & \text{s.t. } g(x, y) \leq c, \\ & \quad -x \leq 0, \\ & \quad -y \leq 0 \end{aligned}$$

The Lagrangian is <sup>a</sup>

$$\mathcal{L}(x, y) = f(x, y) - \lambda[g(x, y) - c] - \mu_1(-x) - \mu_2(-y)$$

The KKT conditions

- (i)  $\mathcal{L}'_x = f'_x - \lambda g'_x + \mu_1 = 0$
- (ii)  $\mathcal{L}'_y = f'_y - \lambda g'_y + \mu_2 = 0$
- (iii)  $\lambda \geq 0$ , with  $\lambda = 0$  if  $g(x, y) < c$
- (iv)  $\mu_1 \geq 0$ , with  $\mu_1 = 0$  if  $x > 0$
- (v)  $\mu_2 \geq 0$ , with  $\mu_2 = 0$  if  $y > 0$

Combining (i) and (iv) yields

$$f'_x - \lambda g'_x \leq 0, \text{ with equality if } x > 0$$

Combining (ii) and (v) yields

$$f'_y - \lambda g'_y \leq 0, \text{ with equality if } y > 0$$

So the KKT conditions are reduced to just

$$\begin{aligned} f'_x - \lambda g'_x &\leq 0, \text{ with equality if } x > 0 \\ f'_y - \lambda g'_y &\leq 0, \text{ with equality if } y > 0 \\ \lambda &\geq 0, \text{ with } \lambda = 0 \text{ if } g(x, y) < c \end{aligned}$$

<sup>a</sup>tips: You should denote the Lagrangian multipliers for the main constraint by  $\lambda$  and nonnegativity constraints by  $\mu$  for easier handling.

### 2.3.5 Examples

**Example 2.8.** Consider the utility maximization problem where there are 2 goods  $x, y$ , price of good  $x$  is  $p$  and price of good  $y$  is normalized to 1, the budget is  $m$ . Find the optimal  $x, y$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & x + \ln(1 + y) \\ \text{s.t.} \quad & px + y \leq m, \\ & x \geq 0 \\ & y \geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

**Solutions:** The Lagrangian is

$$L = x + \ln(1 + y) - \lambda(px + y - m)$$

Assume the solution  $(x^*, y^*)$  exists, it must satisfy the following KKT conditions

- (i)  $L'_x = 1 - p\lambda \leq 0$ , with  $1 - p\lambda = 0 \iff x^* > 0$ ,
- (ii)  $L'_y = \frac{1}{1 + y^*} - \lambda \leq 0$  with  $\frac{1}{1 + y^*} = 0 \iff y^* > 0$
- (iii)  $\lambda \cdot (px^* + y^* - m) = 0$ ,
- (iv)  $\lambda \geq 0, px^* + y^* \leq m$

The objective function is concave in  $(x, y)$ , the constraint is linear, thus the Lagrangian is concave, so the FOC is also sufficient.

Observe from condition (i) that  $\lambda$  cannot be zero, then condition (iii) implies that  $\lambda > 0$  and the constraint binds such that

$$(iv) \quad px^* + y^* = m$$

Regarding which constraints  $x \geq 0, y \geq 0$  bind, we need to consider 4 cases

1.  $x^* = 0, y^* = 0$ : Since  $m > 0$ , this is impossible.
2.  $x^* > 0, y^* = 0$ : From (ii), we get  $\lambda \geq 1$ , then (i) implies that

$$p = \frac{1}{\lambda} \leq 1$$

Then from (iv), we have

$$\begin{aligned} x^* &= m/p, \\ \lambda &= 1/p \end{aligned}$$

if  $0 < p < 1$ .

3.  $x^* = 0, y^* > 0$ : By (iv), we have

$$y^* = m$$

Then (ii) yields

$$\lambda = \frac{1}{1+y^*} = \frac{1}{1+m}$$

Then from (i) we get the condition for this is that

$$p \geq m + 1$$

4.  $x^* > 0, y^* > 0$ : With equality in both (i) and (ii), we have

$$\lambda = 1/p = 1/(1+y^*)$$

It follows that

$$\begin{aligned} y^* &= p - 1, \\ p &> 1 \text{ (because } y^* > 0) \end{aligned}$$

Equation (iv) yields

$$\begin{aligned} x^* &= \frac{m+1-p}{p}, \\ p &< m+1 \text{ (because } x^* > 0) \end{aligned}$$

In summary

1. If  $0 < p \leq 1$ , then  $(x^*, y^*) = (m/p, 0)$  with  $\lambda = 1/p$
2. if  $1 < p < m+1$ , then  $(x^*, y^*) = (\frac{m+1-p}{p}, p-1)$  with  $\lambda = 1/p$
3. if  $p \geq m+1$ , then  $(x^*, y^*) = (0, m)$  with  $\lambda = 1/(1+m)$

In the 2 extreme cases (1) and (3), it is optimal to spend everything on only the cheaper good –  $x$  in case (1) and  $y$  in case (3).

### 2.3.6 Economic Applications

**Ex. 2.11.** Solve the problem

$$\begin{aligned} \max \quad & f(x, y) = x^2 + y^2 + y - 1, \\ \text{s.t. } & g(x, y) = x^2 + y^2 \leq 1 \end{aligned}$$

**Ex. 2.12** (Cost Function). From Varian (1992), p.54–58.

1. Minimizing the cost function for the Cobb-Douglas technology

$$\begin{aligned} \min_{x_1, x_2} & c(\mathbf{w}, y) := w_1 x_1 + w_2 x_2, \\ \text{s.t. } & Ax_1^\alpha x_2^\beta = y. \end{aligned}$$

Derive the optimal demand for  $x_1, x_2$ . Let  $A = 1, \alpha + \beta = 1$ , find the cost function.

2. Minimizing the cost function for CES technology

$$\begin{aligned} & \min_{x_1, x_2} w_1 x_1 + w_2 x_2, \\ & \text{s.t. } x_1^\rho x_2^\rho = y^\rho. \end{aligned}$$

3. Write the cost function for Leontief technology

$$\begin{aligned} & \min_{x_1, x_2} w_1 x_1 + w_2 x_2, \\ & \text{s.t. } f(x_1, x_2) = \min(ax_1, bx_2) = y. \end{aligned}$$

4. Minimizing the cost function for linear technology (using KKT).

$$\begin{aligned} & \min_{x_1, x_2} w_1 x_1 + w_2 x_2, \\ & \text{s.t. } ax_1 + bx_2 = y, \\ & \quad x_1 \geq 0, \\ & \quad x_2 \geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

**Ex. 2.13** (Quasilinear Utility). From Varian (1992), p. 164–165. Solve the problem

$$\begin{aligned} & \max_{x_0, x_1} \log(x_1) + x_0, \\ & \quad p_1 x_1 + x_0 = m, \\ & \quad x_0 \geq 0. \end{aligned}$$

**Ex. 2.14** (Religion). Based on Fan (2008); Farmer and Schelnast (2021) (p.164). Parents derive utility from consumption, child's future earnings, and religious activities  $\rho_t$ . Their problem is

$$\max \ln(c_t) + \beta \ln(w_{t+1}) + \zeta \rho_t$$

Parents do not work when old and accumulate no physical capital, the constraint is

$$c_t = (1 - \rho_t)w_t$$

Human capital is

$$h_{t+1} = h_t^\alpha (1 + \rho_t)^{1-\alpha}.$$

and wage is determined by human capital

$$w_{t+1} = h_{t+1}.$$

Form the problem such that  $\rho_t \geq 0$ .

1. What are the optimal allocations of  $c_t, d_{t+1}, \rho_t$ ?
2. When will parents not spend time on religious activities?

**Ex. 2.15** (Endogenous Retirement). . In this case, workers are allowed to work in the second period of life (Tran, 2022). Find the solutions to

$$\begin{aligned} & \max_{c_t, d_{t+1}, l_{t+1}} \ln(c_t) + \pi[\beta \ln(d_{t+1}) + \gamma \ln(l_{t+1})] \\ & \text{s.t. } c_t + s_t = (1 - \tau)w_t, \\ & \quad d_{t+1} = \frac{R_{t+1}}{\pi} s_t + (1 - l_{t+1})(1 - \tau)\varepsilon w_{t+1} + p_{t+1}l_{t+1} \\ & \quad l_{t+1} \leq 1 \end{aligned}$$

where  $\pi, l_{t+1} \in [0, 1]$  are the old-age survival rate, and retirement time portion,  $\tau, p$  are social security tax and pension rate. Finally,  $\varepsilon \in (0, 1)$  is the old-age productivity compared to young-age. The government runs a balanced budget every period such that

$$\tau w_t = p_{t+1}$$

1. Write the KKT first-order conditions
2. Derive the Euler equation
3. Assume that in the equilibrium,  $l_{t+1} = 1$  is equivalent to full retirement (individuals do not work in the second period) and  $l_{t+1} < 1$  is equivalent to partial retirement (individuals work for a portion of time in the second period), derive a threshold level  $\hat{\varepsilon}$  that separates these 2 equilibria.

**Solution:** See Appendix.B.2

## 2.4 Economic Modeling

In previous sections, you have learned how to solve a partial equilibrium problem. That is, we have only considered one part of the equation (household OR firm). In this part, we bring them together in a equilibrium analysis (household AND firm).

### 2.4.1 Endogenous fertility OLG

**Ex. 2.16.** We first specify the model, solve the problem for each actor inside the model, then bring them together in equilibrium, then study the dynamics of a variable of interest.

#### Household

A representative household chooses the optimal savings and number of children to maximize their utilities as

$$\max_{s_t, n_t} U_t = \ln(c_t) + \beta \ln(R_{t+1} \cdot s_t) + \gamma \ln(n_t),$$

subject to

$$c_t = w_t(1 - \phi n_t) - s_t,$$

given  $\beta, \gamma, \phi \in (0, 1)$ ,  $w > 0$ .

1. Derive the FOCs that solve the problem for  $s_t, n_t$ .
2. Derive  $s^*, n^*$  as a function of  $w$  and other parameters.
3. Verify the SOC by checking the signs of the leading minors of the Hessian.
4. Verify the SOC by evaluating the Eigenvalues of the Hessian.

#### Firm

Suppose there is a representative firm of Cobb-Douglas production function

$$Y_t = K_t^\alpha L_t^{1-\alpha}$$

so that its profit is

$$\pi_t = p_t^Y Y_t - R_t K_t - w_t L_t$$

where input prices  $R_t, w_t$  are perfectly flexible.

1. Normalize  $p_t^Y$  to 1. Derive the optimal  $R_t, w_t$  to maximize  $\pi_t$ .
2. Let the capital-labor ratio as  $k_t = K_t/L_t$ , write  $w_t, R_t$  in terms of  $k_t$ .

#### Dynamics of the Intertemporal Equilibrium

The dynamics of capital and labor markets are characterized by

$$\begin{aligned} K_{t+1} &= s_t L_t, \\ L_{t+1} &= L_t(1 + n_t). \end{aligned}$$

1. Write the law of motion of capital  $k_{t+1} \equiv K_{t+1}/L_{t+1}$  in terms of  $k_t$ . Denote this equation as  $k_{t+1} = \phi(k_t)$ .

2. [Existence of a Steady State] Write the difference equation  $\Delta k_t \equiv k_{t+1} - g(k_t)$ . Show that  $\lim_{k_t \rightarrow \infty} \Delta k_t$  and  $\lim_{k_t \rightarrow 0} \Delta k_t$  have opposite signs. In that case, since  $\Delta k_t$  is continuous, it must take a value of 0 somewhere, by the Intermediate Value Theorem (de la Croix and Michel, 2002) (Proposition 1.2, p.20)
3. [The Steady State is Interior] Also say “Existence of a nontrivial steady state” (trivial means zero). To show this, prove that

$$\begin{aligned} & (\text{saving is large enough}) \lim_{k \rightarrow 0} \frac{k_{t+1}}{k_t} > 1 \text{ or } \lim_{k \rightarrow 0} \frac{s_t}{k_t} > 1 + n, \\ & (\text{capital is bounded}) \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} f'(k_t) = 0 \end{aligned}$$

Also known as “Absence of Catching Point (Poverty Trap)” (de la Croix and Michel, 2002) (Proposition 1.7, p.36), or Inada conditions.

4. [Uniqueness of the Steady State] Show that for all  $k > 0$

$$\phi'(k_t) > 0, \quad \phi''(k_t) < 0$$

de la Croix and Michel (2002) (Proposition 1.3, p.24) requires only the first condition (necessary) while Galor and Ryder (1989) demands the second condition for sufficiency. Why unique? [Hint: monotone]

5. [Find the Steady State] Solve for  $k^*$  by setting  $k_{t+1} = k_t = k^*$

6. [Local Stability] Related to section 1.1.2. The steady state is locally stable if

$$|\phi'(k^*)| < 1$$

It is unstable if  $|\phi'(k^*)| > 1$ . If it equals 1, then the stability cannot be stated from the first-order derivative basis (de la Croix and Michel, 2002) (p.42).

7. Write a code in Python or MATLAB to simulate the model tailored for your country. Use the following parameters, for instance,  $\beta = .99^{120}$ ,  $\gamma = .271$ ,  $\phi = .15$ . What are the fertility rate, saving rate, and steady-state capital? What will happen to  $k^*$  when  $\phi$  increases? See hw2.pdf for more detail.

**Remark 1.** 1. The SOC check in the Household problem would be unnecessary if the constraints are linear in the choice variables (de la Croix, 2012) (p.26).

2. Normally, if you assume a Cobb-Douglas production function and a log utility function, the existence and uniqueness, and stability of a non-trivial steady state are (mostly) guaranteed.
3. In the “Existence of a nontrivial Steady State”, these conditions are known as strengthened Inada condition (Galor and Ryder, 1989). The original Inada conditions are stated in the Solow model where

$$\lim_{k \rightarrow 0} f'(k_t) = \infty, \quad \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} f'(k_t) = 0.$$

**Solutions:** See Appendix.B.1.

### 2.4.2 Endogenous human capital OLG

**Ex. 2.17.** We modify Exercise 2.8 and use some assumptions from Hirazawa and Yakita (2017). In particular, we bring the model into a general equilibrium framework.

The Household sector is

$$\begin{aligned} \max_{c_t, d_{t+1}, n_t, e_t} & \ln(c_t) + \beta \ln(d_{t+1}) + \gamma \ln(n_t) + \gamma \ln(\theta + e_t) \\ \text{s.t. } & c_t + s_t + e_t n_t w_t = (1 - \phi n_t) w_t h_t, \\ & d_{t+1} = (1 + r_{t+1}) s_t, \\ & h_{t+1} = 1 + \mu e_t^\eta \end{aligned}$$

where  $\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \phi, \eta \in (0, 1)$ . Assume that the production sector has the form

$$Y_t = K_t^\alpha L_t^{1-\alpha}$$

where  $L_t = N_t h_t$  is the labor in efficiency units.

1. Find the optimal solutions for Households and the representative firm.
2. Find the changes in  $n_t, e_t$  when  $w_t$  changes.
3. Can  $e_t = 0$ ? Why?
4. Assume an interior solution for  $e_t$ , work out the dynamics of  $k_t$  and  $h_t$ .
5. Find the steady states of  $k$  and  $h$  (if possible).
6. Change the human capital accumulation function to  $h_{t+1} = \mu e_t^\eta h_t^{1-\eta}$  and see if the problems can be solved more easily.

**Remark 2.** At this point, an usual procedure is to analyze the stability of this steady state. However, since there are 2 dynamic variables  $k_{t+1}$  and  $h_{t+1}$ , stability analysis can be difficult. The idea is still the same, we want to show that the “derivatives” of the future variable wrt the current variable be smaller than 1. Check section 1.2 and Appendix ?? for an introduction to dynamic stability analysis. The idea is implemented in the following exercise 2.18.

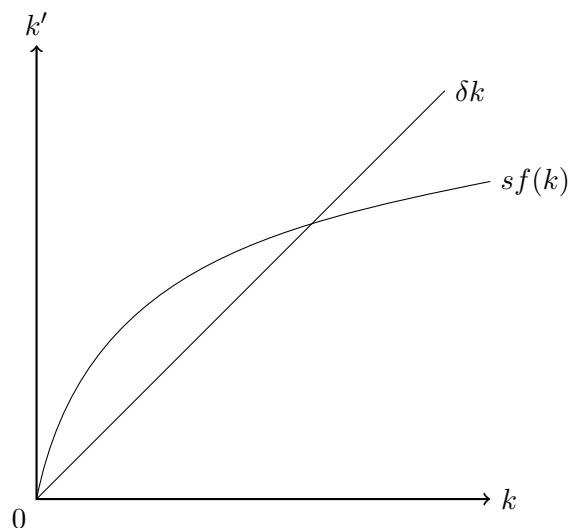
**Ex. 2.18** (Inter-generational Taste Externalities). This exercise is from de la Croix and Michel (2002) p.248, which is a simplified version of de la Croix (1996). Consider the following utility function

$$U_t = \ln(c_t - \theta a_t) + \beta \ln(d_{t+1})$$

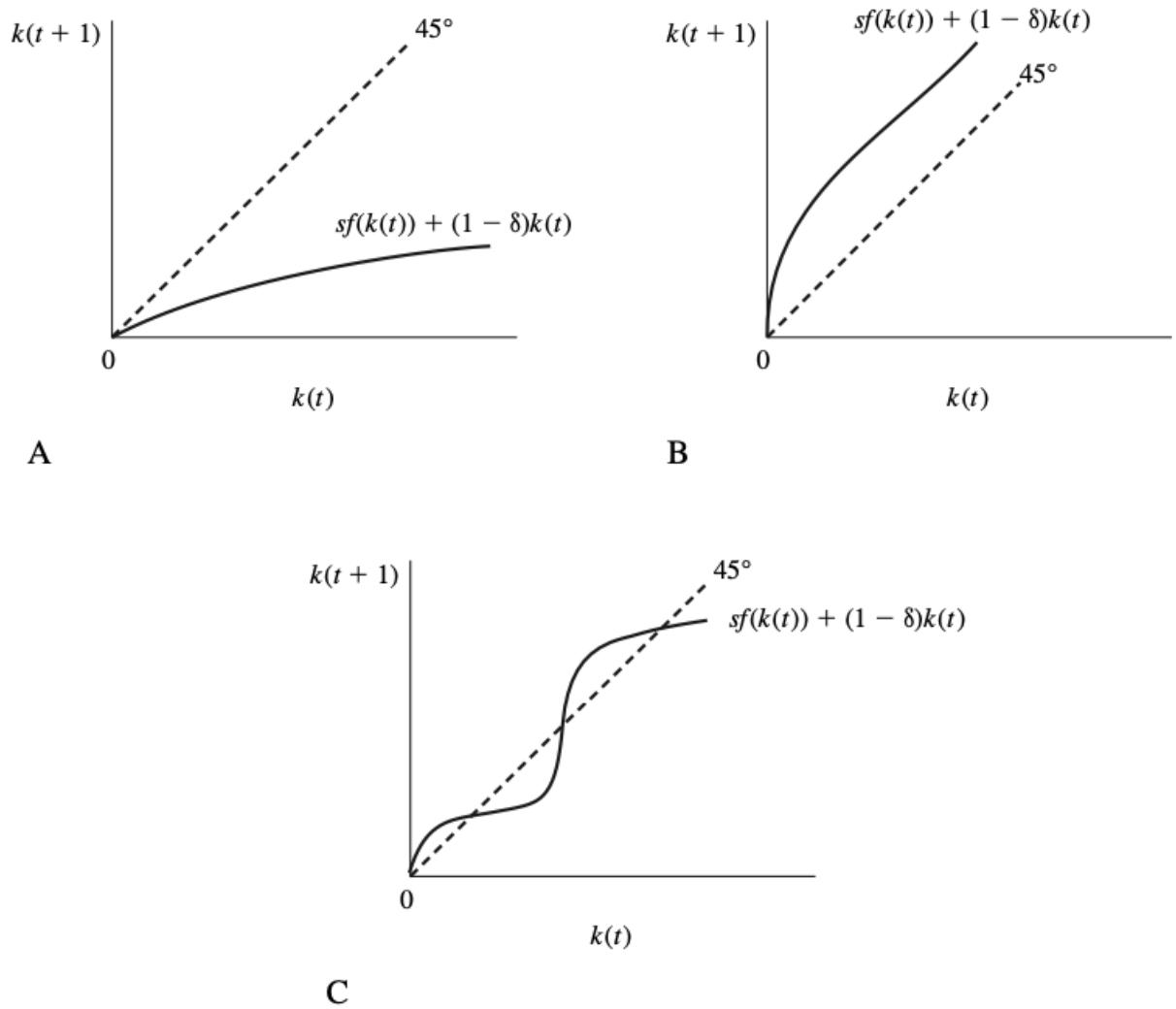
where  $\theta \in (0, 1)$  measure the intensity of inter-generational spillover (aspiration). And

$$\begin{aligned} & (\text{habit formation}) \quad a_t = c_{t-1}, \\ & (\text{budget constraint}) \quad c_t + s_t = w_t. \end{aligned}$$

1. Find the solution for the saving function.
2. Assume that the production function is Cobb-Douglas where  $f(k_t) = Ak_t^\alpha$ . Find the competitive wage and interest rate.
3. Assume  $k_{t+1} = s_t$ . Write the system of 2 dynamic equations  $k_{t+1} = \phi(k_t, a_t)$  and  $a_{t+1} = \psi(k_t, a_t)$ . Find their steady states  $\bar{k}, \bar{a}$ .
4. Under what conditions are the steady states locally stable?



**Fig. 2.6.** When a nontrivial (interior) steady state exists, is unique and stable.



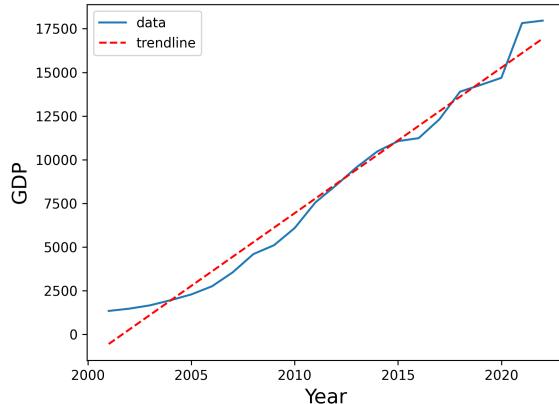
**Fig. 2.7.** Examples of nonexistence and nonuniqueness of interior steady states. Source: [Acemoglu \(2008, p. 41\)](#)

## Chapter 3

# First-Order Differential Equations

### 3.1 Definition

Take China's GDP growth since 2000 for example. The trend is almost linear, so we



**Fig. 3.1.** China's GDP in billions USD (Data source: World Bank).

can write the change in each year as

$$y(t+1) = (1+r)y(t)$$

The growth rate can be calculated as

$$\frac{y(t+1) - y(t)}{y(t)} = r$$

If the time interval is smaller, say a smaller fraction  $\Delta t$  of  $t$ , the total change is divided into smaller portions of time. For example, if the annual growth rate is  $r$ , then the quarterly growth rate is approximately  $r/4$ . The equation is then slightly changed to

$$\frac{y(t + \Delta t) - y(t)}{y(t)\Delta t} = r$$

Cross multiplying yields

$$\frac{y(t + \Delta t) - y(t)}{\Delta t} = r \cdot y(t)$$

Note that  $\Delta t$  can get extremely small. Daily growth rate is  $r/365$ , hourly is  $r/(365 \times 24)$ . By letting  $\Delta t \rightarrow 0$ , by definition of derivatives, the LHS becomes

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow 0} \frac{y(t + \Delta t) - y(t)}{\Delta t} = \frac{dy}{dt}(t).$$

we denote its derivative with respect to time by a “dot”:

$$\dot{y}(t) = \frac{dy}{dt}$$

to arrive at the differential equation

$$\dot{y}(t) = ry(t).$$

In general, this equation can be

$$\dot{y}(t) = f(t)$$

Then, its solution is **THE FUNCTION**  $y(t)$  such that it satisfies the above equation. It can be worked out by integrating  $\dot{x}(t)$  for the whole time line

$$y(t) = \int f(t)dt + k$$

given  $y(0)$ . This chapter lays out the framework on how to find it. For more exposure to differential equations and solution methods, check [Tran and Zhang \(2023, Ch 8.6\)](#).

## 3.2 One-variable: Linear case

### 3.2.1 Autonomous

#### Constant Growth

This is the simplest case. Like the above example, consider the function

$$\dot{x}(t) = \lambda x(t) \tag{3.1}$$

**Theorem 3.2.1.** *The solution to  $\dot{x}(t) = \lambda x(t)$  is  $x(t) = x(0)e^{\lambda t} \equiv x(0) \exp(\lambda t)$ .*

*Proof.* We use the technique called separation. If the differential equation has the form

$$\dot{x}(t) = \frac{dx}{dt} = f(t)g(x)$$

1. Separate the variables ( $x$  to the left, not  $x$  to the right)

$$\frac{1}{g(x)}dx = f(t)dt$$

2. Integrate both sides

$$\int \frac{1}{g(x)}dx = \int f(t)dt$$

3. Isolate  $x(t)$  for solution.

Let us apply this to our case.

1. Separate

$$\frac{\dot{x}(t)}{x(t)} = \frac{1}{x(t)} \frac{dx}{dt} = \lambda$$

2. Integrate both sides (wrt to  $t$ )

$$\int \frac{1}{x(t)} \frac{dx}{dt} dt = \int \lambda dt$$

3. Isolate  $x(t)$  for solution.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{LHS} &= \int \frac{1}{x(t)} dx = \ln(x(t)) + C_1, \\ \text{RHS} &= \lambda t + C_2 \end{aligned}$$

4. Grouping constants yields

$$\ln(x(t)) = \lambda t + \xi$$

Then take exponential of both sides (remember:  $e^{\ln(x)} = x$ ) so that

$$x(t) = e^{\lambda t + \xi} = e^{\lambda t} e^\xi = k e^{\lambda t} \text{ where } k \equiv e^\xi$$

At time  $t = 0$ , we have

$$x(0) = e^0 k = k$$

Plugging back, we obtain

$$x(t) = x(0) e^{\lambda t} \equiv x(0) \exp(\lambda t).$$

■

What is the steady state in this case? Alternatively, that steady state should be the solution to  $\dot{x}(t) = 0$ ? Based on this form, so long as  $\lambda \neq 0$ , the only solution is  $x^* = 0$ .

### Constant Growth plus a Constant

In a more general framework, we are also interested in finding the solution for

$$\dot{x}(t) = \lambda x(t) + b \tag{3.2}$$

where  $b$  is some nonzero constant.

**Theorem 3.2.2.** *The solution to  $\dot{x}(t) = \lambda x(t) + b$  is  $x(t) = \frac{-b}{\lambda} + k e^{\lambda t}$  where  $k$  contains  $x(0)$ .*

*Proof.* Just plug the solution candidate into the equation and see if it works.

$$\begin{aligned} (\text{LHS}) : \dot{x}(t) &= \frac{d}{dt} \left( \frac{-b}{\lambda} + k e^{\lambda t} \right) = \lambda k e^{\lambda t}, \\ (\text{RHS}) : \lambda x(t) &= \lambda \left[ \frac{-b}{\lambda} + k e^{\lambda t} \right] + b = \lambda k e^{\lambda t} = \dot{x}(t) \end{aligned}$$

But how did one come up with such an ingenious solution? Well, they multiply both sides by an integrating factor. In this case, it is  $e^{-\lambda t}$ . By doing so (3.2) becomes

$$\dot{x}(t)e^{-\lambda t} - \lambda x(t)e^{-\lambda t} = be^{-\lambda t}$$

Notice that the LHS is actually the derivative of  $x(t)e^{-\lambda t}$  wrt  $t$ , thus

$$\frac{d}{dt} \left( x(t)e^{-\lambda t} \right) = be^{-\lambda t}$$

Take integrals of both sides

$$x(t)e^{-\lambda t} = \int be^{-\lambda t} dt = -\frac{b}{\lambda}e^{-\lambda t} + k. \text{ (}k\text{ is a constant)}$$

Multiplying both sides with  $e^{\lambda t}$  yields

$$x(t) = \frac{-b}{\lambda} + ke^{\lambda t}$$

Let  $t = 0$ , then  $x(0) = -b/\lambda + k$  so that  $k = x(0) + b/\lambda$ . ■

Note that when  $k = 0$ , the differential equation becomes

$$x(t) = -\frac{b}{\lambda} = x^*$$

implying that this  $x^*$  is the steady state. Another method is to let  $\dot{x} = 0$  in (3.2):

$$0 = \lambda x^* + b$$

### 3.2.2 Stability

Differential equations of these form (3.1) and (3.2) are called *autonomous* because they do not depend on time, but depend on the previous value of the variable. Their steady states are the solutions that  $\dot{x}(t) = 0$

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{x}(t) &= \lambda x(t) && \Rightarrow x^* = 0, \\ \dot{x}(t) &= \lambda x(t) + b && \Rightarrow x^* = -\frac{b}{\lambda} \end{aligned}$$

The graphical solution of the steady state can be expressed as follows.

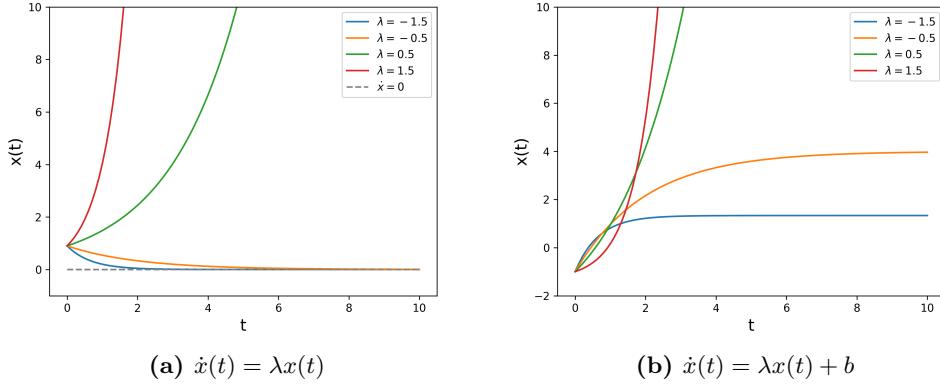
We conclude the condition for stability as follows

**Theorem 3.2.3.** *For a first-order linear ordinary differential equation of the form*

$$\dot{x}(t) = \lambda x(t) + b$$

*The stability condition for a one-variable linear differential equation is as follows:*

1. *If  $\lambda$  is negative, then the solution  $x(t)$  will decay to 0 as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ . This is called asymptotic stability.*
2. *If  $\lambda$  is positive, then the solution  $x(t)$  will grow without bound as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ . This is called instability.*

**Fig. 3.2.** Stability of the steady state

### 3.2.3 Nonautonomous

We move on to the nonautonomous cases where the RHS is also variable with time.

#### Constant Growth plus a variable Coefficient

Now,  $b$  can also depend on time, such as

$$\dot{x}(t) = \lambda x(t) + b(t).$$

**Theorem 3.2.4.** *The solution to  $\dot{x}(t) = \lambda x(t) + b(t)$  is  $x(t) = e^{\lambda t} (k + \int e^{-\lambda t} b(t) dt)$ .*

*Proof.* Multiplying by the integrating factor  $e^{-\lambda t}$ , we obtain

$$\dot{x}(t)e^{-\lambda t} - \lambda x(t)e^{-\lambda t} = b(t)e^{-\lambda t},$$

which is equivalent to

$$\frac{d}{dt} (x(t)e^{-\lambda t}) = e^{-\lambda t} b(t)$$

so that

$$x(t)e^{-\lambda t} = \int e^{-\lambda t} b(t) dt + k, \quad (k \text{ is a constant})$$

Multiplying both sides by  $e^{\lambda t}$  yields

$$x(t) = e^{\lambda t} \left( k + \int e^{-\lambda t} b(t) dt \right)$$

■

#### General case

Finally, we move to the most general case

$$\dot{x}(t) = \lambda(t)x(t) + b(t)$$

so that even the growth rate varies with time. We still employ the same trick, multiplying both sides by a suitably chosen integrating factor  $e^{-A(t)}$  to obtain

$$\dot{x}(t)e^{-A(t)} - \lambda(t)x(t)e^{-A(t)} = b(t)e^{-A(t)} \tag{3.3}$$

Now, we need to find  $A(t)$  such that the LHS equals the derivative of  $x(t)e^{-A(t)}$ . Notice that the derivative of  $x(t)e^{-A(t)}$  is

$$\frac{d}{dt}(x(t)e^{-A(t)}) = \dot{x}(t)e^{-A(t)} - \dot{A}(t)x(t)e^{-A(t)}$$

We, therefore, need to make sure that

$$\dot{A}(t) = \lambda(t)$$

This is done by choosing

$$A(t) = \int \lambda(s)ds. \quad (3.4)$$

The time of  $A(t)$  itself can be different from the time path  $t$  of  $x(t)$ . Imagine they have 2 different clocks of their own so it's better to use a different notation. Now, (3.3) becomes

$$\frac{d}{dt}x(t)e^{-A(t)} = b(t)e^{-A(t)}.$$

Integrating both sides

$$x(t)e^{-A(t)} = \int b(t)e^{-A(t)}dt + k, \quad \text{where } k \text{ is a constant}$$

Multiplying both sides by  $e^{A(t)}$  yields

$$x(t) = e^{A(t)} \left[ k + \int b(t)e^{-A(t)}dt \right]$$

or if we want to expand it using (3.4)

$$x(t) = e^{\int \lambda(s)ds} \left[ k + \int e^{-\int \lambda(s)ds} b(t)dt \right]$$

See [Sydsæter et al. \(2008, p. 204\)](#) for the initial value solution.

**Ex. 3.1.** Solve the following differential equations, and determine the stability of the equilibrium points.

1.  $\dot{x}(t) = -2x(t) + 4$
2.  $\dot{x}(t) = x(t)(3 - x(t))$
3.  $\dot{x}(t) = x(t) \cdot (2 - x(t)) \cdot (x(t) - 1)$
4.  $\dot{N}(t) = rN(t)(1 - N(t)/K)$  where  $r$  is the growth rate,  $K$  is the carrying capacity.
5.  $\dot{x}(t) = e^{2t}/x^2$

### 3.2.4 Bernoulli Differential Equations

Only very special types of differential equation have explicit solutions. However, some of them are not so obvious, unless we try some innovative methods. Such an example is the Bernoulli Differential Equation, which usually has the form

$$\dot{x} + a(t)x = b(t)x^r \quad (3.5)$$

where  $r$  is a fixed real number. Notice that

1. if  $r = 0$ , the equation becomes linear.
2. if  $r = 1$ , it is separable since  $\dot{y} = (b(t) - a(t))x$ .
3. what about  $r \neq 1$ ?

First, divide both sides by  $x^r$

$$x^{-r}\dot{x} + a(t)x^{1-r} = b(t) \quad (3.6)$$

Let denote a transformation defined as follows

$$z = x^{1-r}$$

Then

$$\dot{z} = (1-r)x^{-r}\dot{x}$$

Substituting to (3.6) gives

$$\frac{1}{1-r}\dot{z} + a(t)z = b(t)$$

which is a linear differential equation for  $z$ . Once we found  $z$ , it is easy to obtain  $x$  as

$$x = z^{1/(1-r)}$$

which then becomes the solution of (3.5).

**Ex. 3.2.** Solve the following problems (assuming  $t, x > 0$ .)

1.  $t\dot{x} + 2x = tx^2$
2.  $\dot{x} = 4x + 2e^t\sqrt{x}$
3.  $t\dot{x} + x = x^2 \ln t$

**Ex. 3.3.** Some economic applications

1. Growth model

$$\dot{K} = \alpha A n_0^a e^{(av+\varepsilon)t} K^b - \alpha \delta K$$

where  $A, n_0, a, b, v, \alpha, \delta, \varepsilon$  are positive constants.

2. Haavelmo (1954)'s growth model

$$\dot{K} = \gamma \beta K^\alpha + \theta K$$

where  $\gamma, \beta, \theta, \alpha$  are positive constants,  $\alpha \neq 1$ .

### 3.3 System of 2 Differential Equations

Similar to the difference equations, differential equations can also involve a linear or nonlinear system of 2 or more variables. For example, the solution to the consumption-saving problem with CRRA utility is characterized by two first-order linear differential equations:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(asset accumulation): } \dot{a}(t) &= ra(t) - c(t), \\ \text{(optimal consumption): } \dot{c}(t) &= \frac{r - \rho}{\gamma} c(t). \end{aligned}$$

The general form would be

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{x}(t) &= f(x, y, t) \\ \dot{y}(t) &= g(x, y, t) \end{aligned}$$

This section presents a method to solve such linear systems of differential equations.

#### 3.3.1 Linear Homogeneous System

Consider the following *homogeneous* system, that is, a system of the form

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{x}_1(t) &= f(x_1(t), x_2(t)) \\ \dot{x}_2(t) &= g(x_1(t), x_2(t)) \end{aligned}$$

##### Solution:

For brevity, we omit the  $(t)$  notation. Since the growth rates are constants, we can write the system as

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{x}_1 &= ax_1 + bx_2, \\ \dot{x}_2 &= cx_1 + dx_2 \end{aligned}$$

We can write it in matrix form as

$$\underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} \dot{x}_1 \\ \dot{x}_2 \end{pmatrix}}_{\dot{\mathbf{x}}} = \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}}_{\mathbf{A}} \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix}}_{\mathbf{x}}$$

Assume that  $|\mathbf{A}| \neq 0$ . We have transformed the system to

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{Ax}. \quad (3.7)$$

If  $\mathbf{A}$  is diagonalizable, there exists a matrix  $\mathbf{V}^{2 \times 2}$  such that

$$\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{V} \Lambda \mathbf{V}^{-1}$$

where

$$\mathbf{V} = (\mathbf{v}_1 \ \mathbf{v}_2)$$

be the  $1 \times 2$  matrix whose columns are the **eigenvector** of  $\mathbf{A}$  and

$$\Lambda = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2 \end{pmatrix}$$

be a square matrix  $2 \times 2$  with  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2$  be the **eigenvalues** of  $\mathbf{A}$ . We transform (3.7) to

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{V} \Lambda \mathbf{V}^{-1} \mathbf{x}$$

Multiply both sides with  $\mathbf{V}^{-1}$  yields

$$\mathbf{V}^{-1} \dot{\mathbf{x}} = \Lambda \mathbf{V}^{-1} \mathbf{x}.$$

Define

$$\mathbf{V}^{-1} \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{y}$$

then the system becomes

$$\dot{\mathbf{y}} = \Lambda \mathbf{y} \quad (3.8)$$

We have transformed it to something similar to the very simplest case at (3.1)<sup>(1)</sup>

The system (3.8) implies 2 independent differential equations

$$\begin{pmatrix} \dot{y}_1(t) \\ \dot{y}_2(t) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 y_1(t) \\ \lambda_2 y_2(t) \end{pmatrix}$$

Each  $y_i(t)$  is growing at a constant rate  $\lambda_i$ . Previous analyses give us the solution to each differential equation as

$$y_i(t) = k_i e^{\lambda_i t} \text{ for } i = 1, 2$$

Finally, solutions for  $\mathbf{x}$  is given by

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{V} \mathbf{y}$$

Writing explicitly

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix} &= (\mathbf{v}_1 \quad \mathbf{v}_2) \begin{pmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \mathbf{v}_1 y_1 + \mathbf{v}_2 y_2 \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} v_1 \\ v_2 \end{pmatrix} y_1 + \begin{pmatrix} u_1 \\ u_2 \end{pmatrix} y_2 \\ &= k_1 e^{\lambda_1 t} \begin{pmatrix} v_1 \\ v_2 \end{pmatrix} + k_2 e^{\lambda_2 t} \begin{pmatrix} u_1 \\ u_2 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

where the 2 eigenvectors are

$$\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} v_1 \\ v_2 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} u_1 \\ u_2 \end{pmatrix}$$

### Stability

The stability conditions are very similar to the linear case, we just need to generalize the Jacobian matrix. For the proof, you can see [Simon and Blume \(1994, Ch 22\)](#) and [Sydsæter et al. \(2008, Ch 6.8, p.251\)](#) We summarize the stability analysis as follows

---

<sup>(1)</sup>  $\dot{x}(t) = \lambda x(t)$

**Theorem 3.3.1** (Stability Conditions). *For a two-variable homogeneous system of differential equations, the steady state is  $(0, 0)$ . Let  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2$  be the eigenvalues of the Jacobian matrix, then*

1. *If  $\lambda_1 < 0$  AND  $\lambda_2 < 0$ ,  $|\mathbf{A}| > 0$ , the system is a sink, and the steady state is stable.*
2. *If  $\lambda_1 > 0$  AND  $\lambda_2 > 0$ ,  $|\mathbf{A}| > 0$ , the system is a source, and the steady state is unstable.*
3. *If  $\lambda_1$  AND  $\lambda_2$  have opposite signs,  $|\mathbf{A}| < 0$ , one part of the solution is stable (it converges to 0 as  $t \rightarrow 0$ ), and the other is unstable (it converges to  $\infty$  as  $t \rightarrow 0$ ), the system is a saddle.*

Similar to the case of the difference equation, it is often more practical to use the trace and determinants of the Jacobian.

1. (stable)  $\text{tr}(\mathbf{A}) < 0$  and  $\det(\mathbf{A}) > 0$ .
2. (unstable)  $\text{tr}(\mathbf{A}) > 0$  and  $\det(\mathbf{A}) > 0$ .
3. (saddle)  $\det(\mathbf{A}) < 0$ .

### 3.3.2 Nonlinear Homogeneous Systems

The system is generalized as

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{x} &= f(x, y), \\ \dot{y} &= g(x, y)\end{aligned}$$

Both equations must be **differentiable**. Denote the steady state as  $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$ . We write the system in matrix notation as follows

$$\dot{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{A}\mathbf{x}$$

where, of course, the Jacobian matrix is

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} f'_x & f'_y \\ g'_x & g'_y \end{pmatrix}$$

then its stability can be stated as follows.

**Theorem 3.3.2** (Lyapunov). *Suppose that  $f$  and  $g$  are  $C^1$  functions.*

*Let  $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$  be the steady (equilibrium) state for the system*

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{x} &= f(x, y), \\ \dot{y} &= g(x, y)\end{aligned}$$

*Let  $\mathbf{A}$  be the Jacobian matrix*

$$\mathbf{A} = \begin{pmatrix} f'_x & f'_y \\ g'_x & g'_y \end{pmatrix}$$

with the trace as

$$\text{tr}(\mathbf{A}) = f'_x(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) + f'_y(\bar{x}, \bar{y}),$$

and the determinant as

$$|\mathbf{A}| = f'_x(\bar{x}, \bar{y})g'_y(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) - f'_y(\bar{x}, \bar{y})g'_x(\bar{x}, \bar{y}) > 0$$

Then:

1. If  $\text{tr}(\mathbf{A}) < 0$  and  $|\mathbf{A}| > 0$ , both eigenvalues of  $\mathbf{A}$  have **negative** real parts, then  $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$  is locally asymptotically stable.
2. If  $\text{tr}(\mathbf{A}) > 0$  and  $|\mathbf{A}| > 0$ , both eigenvalues of  $\mathbf{A}$  have **positive** real parts, then  $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$  is unstable.
3. If  $|\mathbf{A}| < 0$ , the eigenvalues are nonzero real numbers of **OPPOSITE** signs, then  $(\bar{x}, \bar{y})$  is a saddle.

Last but not least, since the solutions to the systems (either 1 variable or multivariate) sometimes cannot be attained explicitly, we need to show that such an equilibrium point exists. Fortunately, the theorem is pretty straightforward.

**Theorem 3.3.3** (Existence and Uniqueness). Consider the ODEs

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{x} &= f(x, y, t), \\ \dot{y} &= g(x, y, t)\end{aligned}\tag{3.9}$$

1. If  $f$  and  $g$  are continuous functions in a neighborhood of  $(x_0, y_0, t_0)$ , then there exist functions  $x^*(t)$  and  $y^*(t)$  about that point such that they satisfy the system (3.9) and  $x(t_0) = x_0$ ,  $y(t_0) = y_0$ .
2. If  $f$  and  $g$  are differentiable ( $C^1$ ) at the point  $(x_0, y_0, t_0)$ , then the solution  $x(t), y(t)$  are unique.

**Ex. 3.4.** Determine the local stability of the following (Sydsæter et al., 2008, p.254)

- (a)  $\dot{x} = -x + 0.5y^2$ ,  $\dot{y} = 2x - 2y$  at  $(0, 0)$
- (b)  $\dot{x} = x - 3y + 2x^2 + y^2 - xy$ ,  $\dot{y} = 2x - y - e^{x-y}$  at  $(1, 1)$
- (c)  $\dot{x} = -x^3 - y$ ,  $\dot{y} = x - y^3$  at  $(0, 0)$
- (d)  $\dot{x} = y - x$ ,  $\dot{y} = -x^2 + 8x - 2y$  at  $(6, 6)$
- (e)  $\dot{x} = -3x - 2y + 8x^2 + y^3$ ,  $\dot{y} = 3x + y - 3x^2y^2 + y^4$  at  $(0, 0)$

**Ex. 3.5** (Pollution). Consider the economy (Sydsæter et al., 2008, p. 254)

$$\begin{aligned}(\text{capital}) \quad \dot{K} &= K(sK^{\alpha-1} - \delta - \tau P^2) \\ (\text{pollution}) \quad \dot{P} &= K^\beta - \gamma P\end{aligned}$$

where  $s \in (0, 1)$ ,  $\alpha \in (0, 1)$ ,  $\delta > 0$ ,  $\gamma > 0$ ,  $\beta > 1$ .

1. Assume  $\tau = 0$ . Find the equilibrium point  $(K^*, P^*)$ . Check its stability.
2. Find explicit  $K(t)$  given  $K(0) = K_0 \geq 0$ . Examine its limit as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ .
3. Extension: Assume  $\tau \in (0, 1)$ . Find the new steady state. Determine the stability.

## 3.4 Phase Diagrams

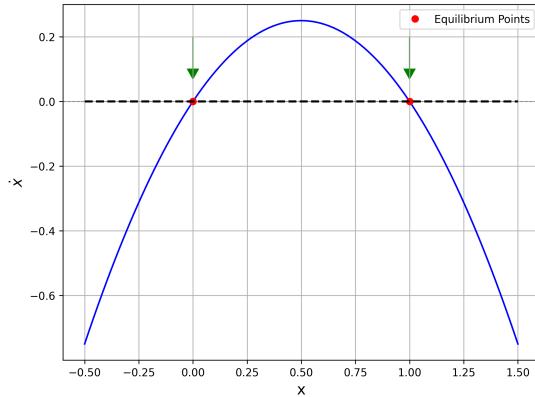
Phase diagrams are particularly useful to visualize the solutions and predict their stability without explicitly solving them. We are only interested in autonomous functions.

### 3.4.1 Single Variable Differential Equations

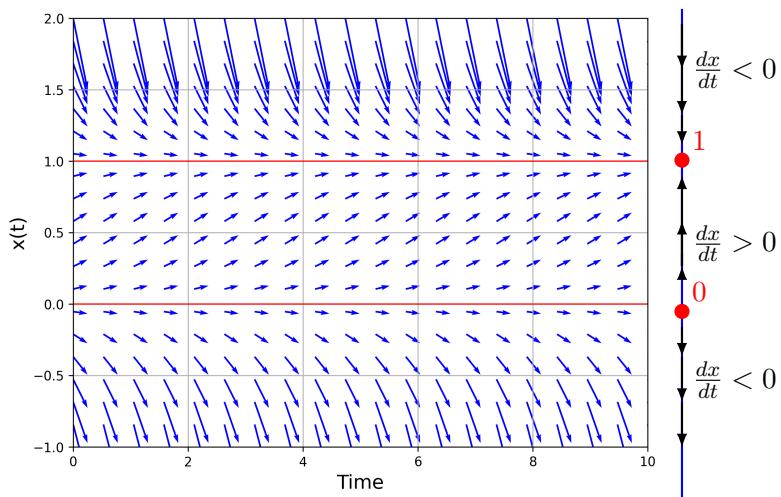
Consider the following <sup>(2)</sup>.

$$\dot{x} = x(1 - x)$$

It is easy to see that there are 2 fixed points 0 and 1. How is the stability at each point?



Without using the eigenvalues, we can use phase diagrams to investigate their stability.



How to construct it?

1. (Nullclines) First, we need to draw the red lines, which represent the fixed points that solve  $\dot{x} = 0$ .
2. (Directional Arrows). To construct the directional arrows (that is, to determine how the points below and above  $x(t)$  behave around  $x^*$ ). This process involves differentiation. Just try a number and see the sign of  $\dot{x}$ .

---

<sup>(2)</sup>You should watch this <https://youtu.be/swt-let4pCI> and this [https://youtu.be/cC2w2z\\_i2DA](https://youtu.be/cC2w2z_i2DA)

### 3.4.2 System of 2 Linear Differential Equations

Next, we move on to a system of 2 linear equations. Construction-wise, it is similar to the case of 1 variable, but we are now concerned with 2 variables instead of 1.

Let us consider the system

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{x} &= ax + by + \kappa_1, \\ \dot{y} &= cx + dy + \kappa_2.\end{aligned}\tag{3.10}$$

where  $a < 0, b < 0, c < 0, d > 0, \kappa_1 > 0, \kappa_2 > 0$ . You can see that

$$ad - bc < 0$$

so the eigenvalues of the Jacobian of this system have OPPOSITE signs. The dynamical system is a “saddle”. Check Fig. 3.4 while reading the following.

1. (A. Nullclines) We need to plot the nullclines, which are the loci  $\dot{x} = 0$  and  $\dot{y} = 0$ . The first locus  $\dot{x} = 0$  is given by

$$y = -\frac{a}{b}x - \frac{\kappa_1}{b}$$

since  $a < 0, b < 0$ , the locus is a straight line with a negative slope in the  $(x, y)$  plane. The second locus  $\dot{y} = 0$  is given by

$$y = -\frac{c}{d}x - \frac{\kappa_2}{d}$$

since  $c < 0, d > 0$ , the locus is a straight line with a positive slope.

2. (B. Steady State) The steady state is given by the intersection of the two nullclines. Let's call it  $(x^*, y^*)$ . Together with the nullclines, it divides the  $(x, y)$  plane into 4 areas.
3. (C. Directional Arrows) These arrows determine the direction of the system's trajectories over time anywhere on the phase plane. Look at the system (3.10).

- From the  $\dot{x}$  function, we see that

$$\frac{d\dot{x}}{dx} = a < 0 \quad \frac{d\dot{x}}{dy} = b < 0$$

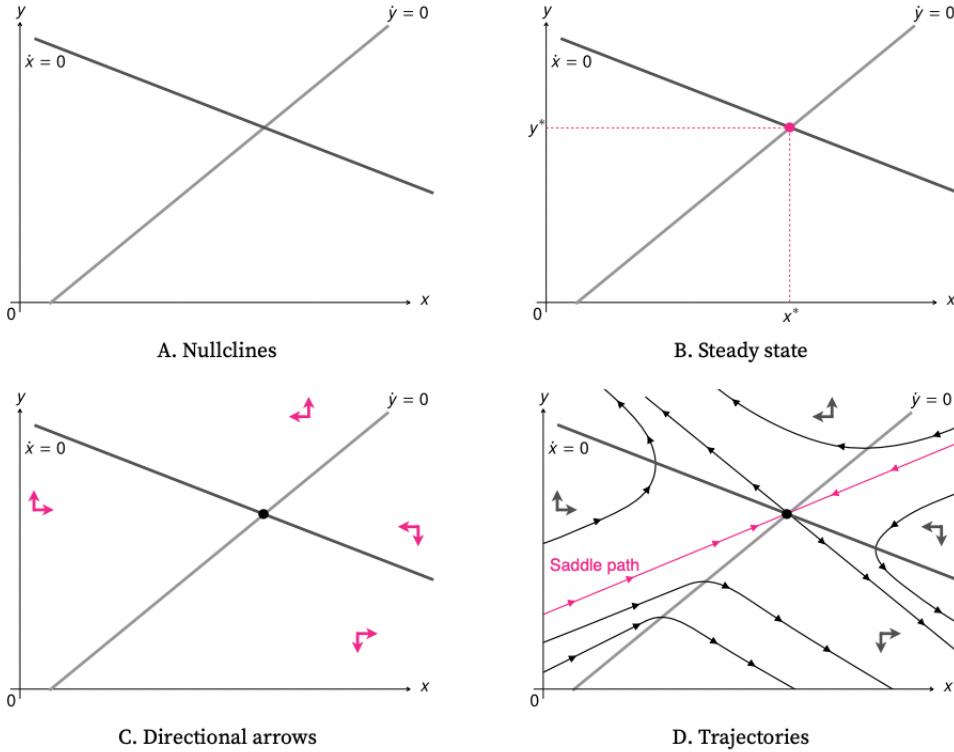
so  $\dot{x}$  is decreasing in  $x$  (and decreasing in  $y$ ). Any point above the  $\dot{x} = 0$  line must have  $\dot{x} < 0$  and any point below  $\dot{x} = 0$  must have  $\dot{x} > 0$ .

- From the  $\dot{y}$  function, we see that

$$\frac{d\dot{y}}{dy} = d > 0 \quad \frac{d\dot{y}}{dx} = c < 0$$

so  $\dot{y}$  is increasing in  $y$  (and decreasing in  $x$ ). Any point above the  $\dot{y} = 0$  line must have  $\dot{y} > 0$  and any point below  $\dot{y} = 0$  must have  $\dot{y} < 0$ .

- (D. Trajectories) Using the information above, we can draw trajectories that satisfy the system. These are solutions to the system. To select a specific solution among all possible solutions, we will need to specify either an initial condition or a final condition. Among all the trajectories, we highlight the saddle path for the system. We know that such a saddle path exist because the eigenvalues of the system have opposite sign. The saddle path is the straight line that goes through the steady state.



**Fig. 3.4.** Phase diagram of the dynamical system (3.10) (Michaillat, 2023) .

**Ex. 3.6.** The exercises here are from [Michaillat \(2023\)](#); [Shone \(2002\)](#)

(a) (Problem 3) Consider the linear system of differential equations given by

$$\begin{pmatrix} \dot{x} \\ \dot{y} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 4 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$$

1. Find the general solution of the system using either eigenvalue method, given  $(x_0, y_0) = (\kappa_1, \kappa_2)$ .
2. Draw the phase diagram that plots the trajectories of the system

(b) The IS-LM continuous time model ([Shone, 2002](#), p.10.3).

$$(IS) : c(t) = a + b(1 - \tau)y(t) - hr(t),$$

$$(LM) : m(t) = ky(t) - ur(t)$$

where  $a > 0, b \in (0, 1), \tau \in (0, 1), h > 0$  and  $c, a, b, \tau, y, h, r$  are consumption, fixed consumption, marginal propensity to consume, tax, real income, coeff. of investment, and interest rate. On the other hand,  $k, u > 0$  control the demand for real money. Assume that the dynamics of the 2 markets are

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{y} &= \alpha(c(t) - y(t)) \quad (\alpha > 0), \\ \dot{r} &= \beta(m(t) - m_0) \quad (\beta > 0) \end{aligned}$$

where income adjusts according to the excess demand in that market and interest rates adjust according to the excess demand in the money market.

1. Express the system explicitly in  $\dot{y}, \dot{r}$ .
2. Find the fixed point  $y^*, r^*$ .
3. Draw the phase diagram with the 2 loci  $\dot{y} = 0$  and  $\dot{r} = 0$ .

### 3.4.3 System of 2 Nonlinear Differential Equations

In macroeconomics, most of the advanced dynamics fall into this category. These systems, in general, are difficult to solve explicitly. Nevertheless, without solving them, we can still characterize their properties by constructing the phase diagrams.

Consider the following nonlinear system that describes a typical growth model

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{k} &= f(k) - c - \delta k, \\ \dot{c} &= [f'(k) - (\delta + \rho)]c\end{aligned}\tag{3.11}$$

where  $\rho > 0, \delta \in (0, 1)$  are parameters, the capital stock  $k(t)$  is a state variable with the initial value  $k_0$  given and  $c(t)$  is the control variable. The production function satisfies the Inada conditions as follows

$$\begin{aligned}f(0) &= 0, \\ f' &> 0, f'' < 0, \\ \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} f'(k) &= 0, \lim_{k \rightarrow 0} f'(k) = \infty.\end{aligned}$$

1. (A. Nullclines) As always, we draw the nullclines. The  $\dot{k} = 0$  curve is defined by

$$c = f(k) - \delta k$$

The  $\dot{c} = 0$  curve is defined by

$$f'(k) = \delta + \rho.$$

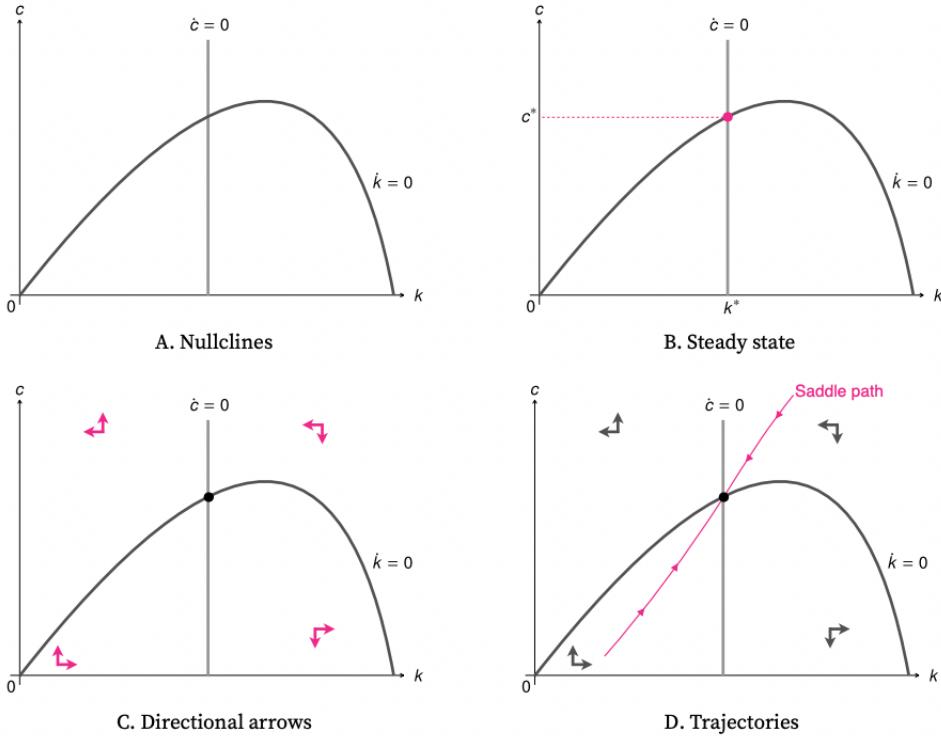
In the  $(k, c)$  plane, the  $\dot{k} = 0$  curve is concave in  $k$  (because  $f(k)$  is concave) while the  $\dot{c} = 0$  curve is just a vertical line.

2. (B. Steady State) The intersection of these two loci is the steady state  $(k^*, c^*)$ .
3. (C. Directional Arrows) To do this, we investigate the partial derivatives

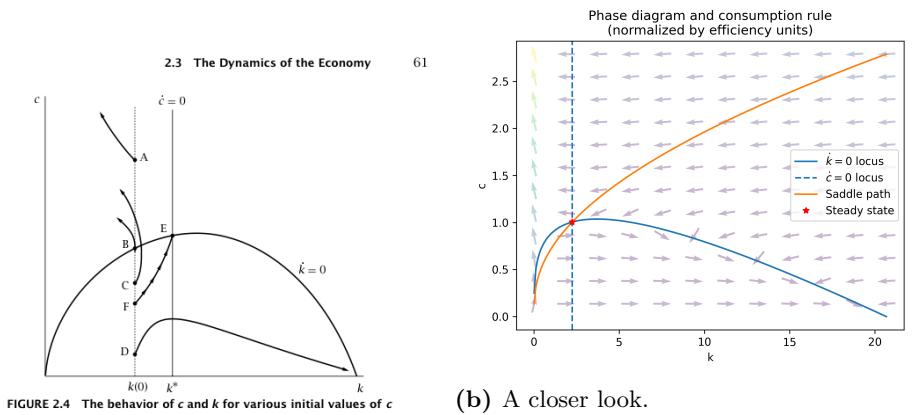
$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial \dot{k}}{\partial c} &= -1 < 0, \\ \frac{\partial \dot{c}}{\partial k} &= c \cdot f''(k) < 0\end{aligned}$$

What do they mean?

- The first equation says  $\dot{k}$  is a decreasing function in  $c$ . So when  $c$  increases,  $\dot{k}$  turns more negative, implying that  $k$  decreases (points above  $\dot{k} = 0$  moves leftward); and when  $c$  decreases, the reverse happens,  $k$  increases and the points move rightward.
  - The second equation says  $\dot{c}$  is decreasing in  $k$ . So when  $k$  increases,  $\dot{c}$  turns negative, implying that  $c$  decreases (the points to the right of  $\dot{c} = 0$  moves downward); and when  $k$  decreases,  $c$  increases and the points to the left of  $\dot{c} = 0$  moves upward.
4. (D. Trajectories) The directional arrows drawn describe a saddle around the steady state. The only way for the economy to converge to the steady state is on the saddle path leading to it. This means that given any initial capital  $k_0$ , initial consumption  $c_0$  is such that the pair  $(k_0, c_0)$  lies on the saddle path.



**Fig. 3.5.** Phase Diagram of system (3.11) (Michaillat, 2023).



(b) A closer look.  
Source code: [https://github.com/Mv77/Ramsey\\_growth/blob/master/Ramsey.py](https://github.com/Mv77/Ramsey_growth/blob/master/Ramsey.py)

**Fig. 3.6.** More on the trajectories of this model.

### Linearization around the Steady State

The phase diagram indicates that the system is a saddle around the steady state in Fig. 3.5. We can also obtain this result by linearizing the nonlinear system (3.11) using a first-order Taylor expansion about the steady state:

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{k} &= \dot{k}^* + (k - k^*) \frac{\partial \dot{k}}{\partial k} + (c - c^*) \frac{\partial \dot{k}}{\partial c}, \\ \dot{c} &= \dot{c}^* + (k - k^*) \frac{\partial \dot{c}}{\partial k} + (c - c^*) \frac{\partial \dot{c}}{\partial c}.\end{aligned}$$

Since at the steady state  $\dot{k}^* = \dot{c}^* = 0$ , the system reduced to

$$\begin{pmatrix} \dot{k} \\ \dot{c} \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{J}^* \begin{pmatrix} k - k^* \\ c - c^* \end{pmatrix}$$

where  $\mathbf{J}^*$  is the Jacobian matrix evaluated at the steady state

$$\mathbf{J}^* = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial \dot{k}}{\partial k}|_{(k^*, c^*)} & \frac{\partial \dot{k}}{\partial c}|_{(k^*, c^*)} \\ \frac{\partial \dot{c}}{\partial k}|_{(k^*, c^*)} & \frac{\partial \dot{c}}{\partial c}|_{(k^*, c^*)} \end{pmatrix}.$$

More explicitly

$$\mathbf{J}^* = \begin{pmatrix} f'(k^*) - \delta & -1 \\ cf''(k^*) & f'(k^*) - (\delta + \rho) \end{pmatrix}.$$

The result of evaluation is

$$\mathbf{J}^* = \begin{pmatrix} \rho & -1 \\ cf''(k) & 0 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Calculating its determinant shows that

$$\det(\mathbf{J}^*) = cf''(k) < 0$$

Thus, the 2 eigenvalues have opposite sign, so the system around the steady state is a saddle.

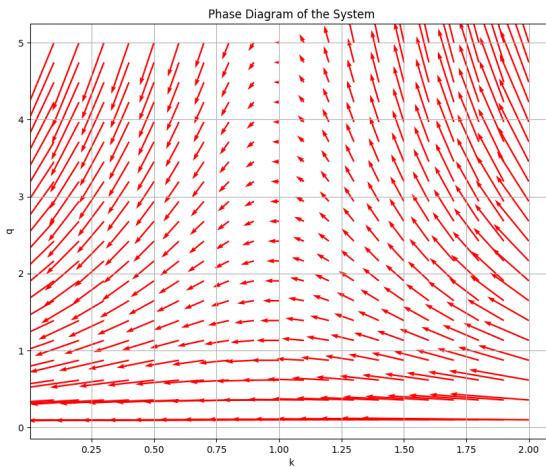
**Ex. 3.7.** Given the system

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{k}(t) &= \frac{q(t) - 1}{\chi} k(t), \\ \dot{q}(t) &= rq(t) - f'(k(t)) - 0.5\chi^{-1}(q(t) - 1)^2 \end{aligned}$$

where  $\chi, r > 0$  and

$$f(k(t)) = Ak(t)^\alpha$$

Draw the phase diagram and show that the steady state is a saddle point locally.



**Fig. 3.7.** Illustration with  $r = 0.1, \chi = 0.9, A = 2, \alpha = 0.3$ .

*Solution.* Hint for Ex. 3.5. Solve this using the Bernoulli transformation by first dividing both sides by  $K^\alpha$ . The general solution should be

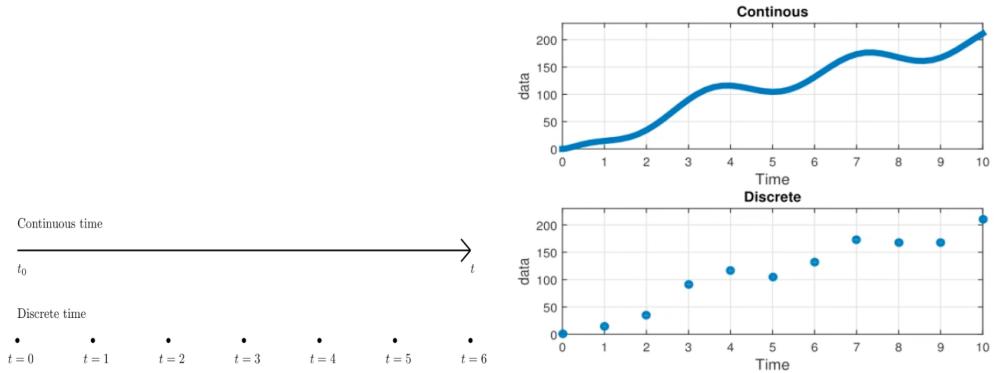
$$K(t) = \left[ Ce^{-\delta(1-\alpha)t} + \frac{s}{\delta} \right]^{1/(1-\alpha)}$$

where  $C$  can be found by letting  $t = 0$ . ■

## Chapter 4

# Dynamic Programming

There are 2 versions of dynamic optimization methods. The first deals with continuous time, where a variable is differentiable with time. The second deals with discrete time, where a variable is not differentiable with respect to time.



**Fig. 4.1.** Conceptualization of Time. Source: [Klaus Prettner](#)

In discrete time, we often use the Bellman method, while in continuous time, we often use the Hamiltonian method. Both of them are useful for analysis, and then we often use numerical simulations or a phase diagram to work out the dynamics of the model. The notes are based on [Chiang \(1992\)](#); [Sydsæter et al. \(2008\)](#); [Heer and Maussner \(2009\)](#); [Campante et al. \(2021\)](#), with references to a lot of online materials such as

1. <http://www.chrisedmond.net/phd2019.html>
2. <http://www.chrisedmond.net/hons2019.html>
3. <https://pascalmichaillat.org/c3/>
4. <https://www.eco.uc3m.es/~jrincon/Teaching/Master/SDDP.pdf>
5. [https://lhendricks.org/econ720/ih1/ih1\\_dp\\_s1.pdf](https://lhendricks.org/econ720/ih1/ih1_dp_s1.pdf)
6. [http://alexrichterecon.com/AWR\\_files/MacroTheoryNotes.pdf](http://alexrichterecon.com/AWR_files/MacroTheoryNotes.pdf)

## 4.1 The Ramsey model

This is a discrete-Time optimal growth model first introduced by [Ramsey \(1928\)](#).

The household solves

$$\begin{aligned} \max_{c_t} & \sum_{t=0}^{\infty} \beta^t u(c_t), \\ \text{s.t. } & c_t = f(k_t) - k_{t+1} + (1 - \delta)k_t. \end{aligned}$$

Assume a nonzero initial condition, the constraint gives us the equation of motion of the state variable

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{(transition equation)} & k_{t+1} = f(k_t) + (1 - \delta)k_t - c_t, \\ \text{(initial condition)} & k_0 > 0 \end{array}$$

Find the solution for the optimal choice of  $c_t$  and  $k_t$ . In this problem, you start your life with initial wealth  $k_0$ . Each period, you consume a quantity  $c_t \geq 0$  for utility  $u(c_t)$  and save the rest for next period.

## 4.2 Lagrangian Method

Using Lagrangian, the direct approach is to choose two sequences of variables  $\{c_t\}_{t=0}^{+\infty}$  and  $\{k_t\}_{t=0}^{+\infty}$ , given initial  $k_0$ . We can write down the Lagrangian:

$$\mathcal{L} = \sum_{t=0}^{\infty} \beta^t u(c_t) + \sum_{t=0}^{\infty} \lambda_t [f(k_t) + (1 - \delta)k_t - k_{t+1} - c_t]$$

Grouping all the summation and rewriting the Lagrangian:

$$\mathcal{L} = \sum_{t=0}^{\infty} [\beta^t u(c_t) + \lambda_t (f(k_t) + (1 - \delta)k_t - k_{t+1} - c_t)]$$

The term inside the sum is optimized at each  $t$  following the modified Lagrangian:

$$L = \beta^t u(c_t) + \lambda_t (f(k_t) + (1 - \delta)k_t - k_{t+1} - c_t)$$

FOC: (Note that  $k_{t+1}$  appears twice at time  $t$  and  $t+1$ )

$$(c_t) : \frac{\partial L}{\partial c_t} = \beta^t u'(c_t) - \lambda_t = 0 \quad (4.1)$$

$$(k_{t+1}) : \frac{\partial L}{\partial k_{t+1}} = -\lambda_t + \lambda_{t+1} [f'(k_{t+1}) + (1 - \delta)] = 0 \quad (4.2)$$

By virtue of Eq. (4.1), we see that:

$$\beta^{t+1} u'(c_{t+1}) = \lambda_{t+1}$$

For sufficient conditions, we need a complementary slackness condition such that

$$\beta^t u'(c_t) k_{t+1} = 0 \text{ for all } t \geq 0$$

Since  $c_t \geq 0$ , the capital wealth  $k_{t+1}$  never falls to zero because if  $k_T = 0$ , then  $c_t = 0$  for all  $t \geq T$ , which cannot be optimal because  $u'(0) = +\infty$  for all  $t \geq T$ .

Plugging back to Eq. (4.2) and rearranging give us the Euler equation:

$$\frac{u'(c_t)}{u'(c_{t+1})} = \beta [f'(k_{t+1}) + (1 - \delta)]$$

Consider the utility function  $u(c_t) = \ln(c_t)$ , we have:

$$\frac{c_{t+1}}{c_t} = \beta [f'(k_{t+1}) + (1 - \delta)]$$

In the steady-state,  $c_{t+1} = c_t = \bar{c}$  and  $k_{t+1} = k_t = \bar{k}$ .

Provided with a functional form of the production function  $f(k)$ , one can find the steady-state values of  $\bar{c}, \bar{k}$  and then use backward induction to figure out the dynamics from a given  $k_0$ .

### 4.3 Bellman Method

Instead of looking for 2 infinite sequences  $\{c_t\}_{t=0}^{+\infty}$  and  $\{k_t\}_{t=0}^{+\infty}$ , the dynamic programming approach looks for a time-invariant policy function  $h$  mapping wealth ( $k_t$ ) at the beginning of period  $t$  into optimal consumption in period  $t$ ,  $c_t$ , such that the sequence  $\{c_t\}_{t=0}^{+\infty}$  generated by iterating

$$c_t = h(k_t), \tag{4.3}$$

$$k_{t+1} = f(k_t) + (1 - \delta)k_t - c_t \tag{4.4}$$

starting from initial wealth  $k_0$  solves the consumption-saving problem. This method has some desirable properties such as: helping us derive the closed-form solutions for the policy function  $h$ , allowing us to characterize the theoretical properties of the policy function, and applying various numerical methods to solve the problem.

The following steps describe Bellman's method.

1. To determine the policy function  $h$  and solve this problem, we first need to solve for an auxiliary function that we call **Value function**. It measures the **optimized** lifetime utility from consumption, starting with an initial wealth  $k_0$ .

$$V(k_t) = \max_{\{c_t, k_{t+1}\}_{t=0}^{+\infty}} \sum_{t=0}^{+\infty} \beta^t u(c_t)$$

2. This Value function can be transformed to a functional equation called the **Bellman equation**.

$$V(k_t) = [u(c_t) + \beta V(k_{t+1})] \tag{4.5}$$

where one can replace

$$c_t = f(k_t) - k_{t+1} + (1 - \delta)k_t$$

so the problem changes from optimizing  $c_t$  to optimizing  $k_{t+1}$ . Let's rewrite the Value Function as

$$V(k_t) = \max_{k_{t+1}} [u(f(k_t) - k_{t+1} + (1 - \delta)k_t) + \beta V(k_{t+1})]$$

3. Maximizing the Value function wrt. the control variable  $k_{t+1}$ :

$$\frac{\partial V(k_t)}{\partial k_{t+1}} = 0 \Leftrightarrow \frac{\partial u(k_{t+1})}{\partial k_{t+1}} + \beta \frac{\partial V(k_{t+1})}{\partial k_{t+1}} = 0$$

4. Do we know  $\frac{\partial V(k_{t+1})}{\partial k_{t+1}}$ ? Yes, it can be obtained by differentiating the Value Function to the state variable  $k_t$  (The Benveniste-Scheinkman Equation)

$$\frac{\partial V(k_t)}{\partial k_t} = (f'(k_t) + 1 - \delta)u'(f(k_t) - k_{t+1} + (1 - \delta)k_t),$$

which, by forwarding 1 period, implies that

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial V(k_{t+1})}{\partial k_{t+1}} &= (f'(k_{t+1}) + 1 - \delta)u'(f(k_{t+1}) - k_{t+2} + (1 - \delta)k_{t+1}) \\ &= (f'(k_{t+1}) + 1 - \delta)u'(\mathbf{c}_{t+1}) \end{aligned}$$

5. Derive the Euler equation relating the dynamics of the choice variable.

$$\frac{u'(c_t)}{u'(c_{t+1})} = \beta(f'(k_{t+1}) + (1 - \delta))$$

where the transversality condition holds

$$\lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \beta^T u'(c_T) k_{T+1} = 0.$$

6. The Euler condition should help us determine the Policy function that provides a mapping from state (state variable  $k_t$ ) to actions (choice variable  $c_t$ ). Given the initial wealth  $k_0$ , how much should be consumed. The policy function allows us to determine the optimal path of consumption by iterating equations (4.3) and (4.4).

**Ex. 4.1.** Apply and solve for the Euler equation of the following problems.

1. CRRA consumption-saving

$$\begin{aligned} \max_{c_t} \sum_{t=0}^{+\infty} \beta^t \frac{c_t^{1-\sigma}}{1-\sigma} \\ a_{t+1} = (1+r)a_t - c_t, \\ a_0 > 0 \end{aligned}$$

given  $\sigma > 0, \sigma \neq 0, 0 < \beta < 1, 0 < r < 1$ .

2. Brock-Mirman model (1972)

$$\begin{aligned} \max_{c_t} \sum_{t=0}^{+\infty} \beta^t \ln(c_t) \\ k_{t+1} = k_t^\alpha - c_t, \\ k_0 > 0 \end{aligned}$$

given  $0 < \beta < 1, A > 0, 0 < \alpha < 1$ .

3. Ramsey-Cass-Koopsman (1965)

$$\begin{aligned} \max_{c_t} & \sum_{t=0}^{+\infty} \beta^t \ln(c_t) \\ k_{t+1} &= k_t^\alpha - c_t + (1 - \delta)k_t, \\ k_0 &> 0 \end{aligned}$$

given  $0 < \beta < 1, A > 0, 0 < \alpha < 1, 0 < \delta < 1$ .

4. Habit Persistence (Manuelli and Sargent, 2009, p.8)

$$\begin{aligned} \max_{c_t} & \sum_{t=0}^{\infty} \beta^t (\ln c_t + \gamma \ln c_{t-1}) \\ c_t &= Ak_t^\alpha - k_{t+1} \end{aligned}$$

given  $0 < \beta < 1, A > 0, 0 < \alpha < 1, k_0 > 0, c_{-1} > 0, \gamma > 0$ .

## 4.4 Closed-Form Solutions

Having the Euler equation tells you the optimal plan and derive the steady-state equilibrium. However, to figure out the dynamics, that is, the Policy function, it is often impossible to derive directly. In the next task, we learn how to derive the Value Function and Policy Function using Guess and Verify methods.

### 4.4.1 Guess and Verify the Policy Function

**Conjecture:** Suppose the Policy function has the following form

$$c_t = \mu k_t^\alpha \quad (4.6)$$

so that consumption takes a constant fraction of income. The trick is to find an expression for  $\mu$  which satisfies the Euler equation. Substituting (4.6) into (4.16) yields

$$\frac{k_{t+1}^\alpha}{k_t^\alpha} = \alpha \beta k_{t+1}^{\alpha-1}$$

This implies

$$k_{t+1} = \alpha \beta k_t^\alpha$$

Constraint becomes

$$c_t = k_t^\alpha - k_{t+1} = (1 - \alpha \beta)k_t^\alpha.$$

That is our Policy function in closed form.

### 4.4.2 Guess and Verify the Value Function

**Conjecture:** Suppose the Value function has the following form

$$V(k_t) = A + B \ln(k_t) \quad (4.7)$$

The guess depends on the form of the utility function and the number of state variables. Here, the utility function is logarithmic and there is only 1 state variable  $k_t$ . What we need to do is to find  $A$  and  $B$ . Using this guess, the Bellman equation becomes

$$V(k_t) = \max_{c_t, k_{t+1}} \ln(c_t) + \beta(A + B \ln(k_{t+1}))$$

The Lagrangian is

$$\mathcal{L} = \ln(c_t) + \beta A + \beta B \ln(k_{t+1}) + \lambda_t(k_{t+1} - k_t^\alpha - c_t)$$

FOC:

$$c_t : \frac{1}{c_t} = \lambda_t \quad (4.8)$$

$$k_{t+1} : \frac{\beta B}{k_{t+1}} = \lambda_t \quad (4.9)$$

So that

$$k_{t+1} = \beta B c_t$$

Plugging back to the budget constraint to get:

$$c_t = \frac{k_t^\alpha}{1 + \beta B} \quad (4.10)$$

$$k_{t+1} = \frac{\beta B k_t^\alpha}{1 + \beta B} \quad (4.11)$$

Plugging back to the Value function:

$$V(k_t) = \ln\left(\frac{1}{1 + \beta B} k_t^\alpha\right) + \beta A + \beta B \ln\left(\frac{\beta B}{1 + \beta B} k_t^\alpha\right)$$

Rearrange to get:

$$V(k_t) = \underbrace{[\beta(A + B \ln(\beta B)) - (1 + \beta B) \ln(1 + \beta B)]}_{A} + \underbrace{\alpha(1 + \beta B) \ln(k_t)}_{B}$$

By juxtaposing with equation (4.7), with some algebra we get:

$$A = \frac{\alpha\beta}{(1 - \alpha\beta)(1 - \beta)} \ln(\alpha\beta) + \frac{1}{1 - \beta} \ln(1 - \alpha\beta)$$

$$B = \frac{\alpha}{1 - \alpha\beta}$$

Plugging back to (4.10) and (4.11), we get:

$$c_t = (1 - \alpha\beta)k_t^\alpha$$

$$k_{t+1} = \alpha\beta k_t^\alpha$$

With given  $k_0 > 0$ , the close-form solutions above solve the planner's problem.

**Ex. 4.2.** Continuing from Ex.4.1. Use Guess and Verify method to find the Value and Policy function of those examples.

1. CRRA consumption-saving – **Conjecture:** Value function  $V(k) = A + B \ln(k)$ .
2. Brock-Mirman – **Conjecture:** Value function  $V(k) = A + B \ln(k)$ .
3. RCK – **Conjecture:** Value function  $V(k) = A + B \ln(k)$ .
4. Habit Persistence – **Conjecture:** Value function  $V(k, c_{-1}) = E + F \ln(k) + G \ln(c_{-1})$  and Policy function  $\ln(k_{t+1}) = I + H \ln(k_t)$

## 4.5 Value Function Iteration

Most oftentimes, when the model becomes complicated, you may not be able to obtain the closed-form solution as above. In such a case, one can think of numerical methods to approximate the Value or Policy function such as Value Function Iteration, Howard's Policy Function Iteration, or Euler Equation Iteration. In this section, we focus on the easiest method, Value Function Iteration. This method works because the Bellman Operator is a contraction mapping – successive iterations will converge linearly to the true solution (For proof, see Theorem 12.1.1 of Judd(1998), p.402).

### 4.5.1 The Algorithm

Recall the Bellman equation at (4.5) <sup>(1)</sup>.

$$\begin{aligned} V(k) &= \max u(f(k) - k') + \beta V(k') \\ c + k' &= k^\alpha \end{aligned}$$

First, define  $V_j(k)$  as a value function when the planning horizon ends at  $j$  and forward. In other words,  $V = \lim_{j \rightarrow \infty} V_j$  where  $V$  satisfies the Bellman equation.

1. Compute  $V_1$ . The Bellman is

$$V_1(k) = \max \ln(c) + \beta V_0(k')$$

We can take any guess for  $V_0$ . It is convenient and intuitive to take  $V_0 = 0$ . Since this planning will be terminal, there should not be any  $k$  to be carried over to the next period. Consequently,  $k' = 0$ . By plugging  $k' = 0$  the Bellman equation becomes

$$V_1(k) = \max \ln(c)$$

FOC is trivial and we get the policy function  $c = k^\alpha$ .

2. Compute  $V_2$ . Again, the Bellman is

$$V_2(k) = \max \ln(c) + \beta V_1(k')$$

where

$$V_1(k') = \alpha \ln k'$$

as found in the previous step. Specifically

$$V_2(k) = \max \ln(c) + \beta \alpha \ln k'$$

We need to solve this for the next policy function. Taking FOCs:

$$\begin{aligned} c &= \frac{1}{1 + \beta \alpha} k^\alpha, \\ k' &= \frac{\alpha \beta}{1 + \beta \alpha} k^\alpha \end{aligned}$$

Then evaluate  $V_2$  to obtain

$$V_2(k) = \ln \left( \frac{1}{1 + \alpha \beta} \right) + \alpha \beta \ln \left( \frac{\alpha \beta}{1 + \alpha \beta} k \right) + \alpha(1 + \beta \alpha) \ln k$$

$$\text{or } V_2(k) = V_0^2 + V_1^2 \ln k.$$

---

<sup>(1)</sup>We suppress  $t$  notation and let  $t + 1$  variable represented by a “prime”.

3. Compute  $V_3$ . Proceed exactly like before

$$V_3(k) = \max \ln c + \beta V_2(k')$$

FOC gives

$$\begin{aligned} c &= \frac{1}{1 + \alpha\beta + \alpha^2\beta^2} k^\alpha, \\ k' &= \frac{\alpha\beta + \alpha^2\beta^2}{1 + \alpha\beta + \alpha^2\beta^2} k^\alpha \end{aligned}$$

Plugging back to Bellman gives

$$V_3(k) = \text{const.} + \alpha(1 + \alpha\beta + \alpha^2\beta^2) \ln k$$

4. If we iterate large enough, the pattern emerges as

$$V_\infty(k) = \text{some constant} + \underbrace{\alpha(1 + \alpha\beta + (\alpha\beta)^2 + (\alpha\beta)^3 + \cdots + \alpha^{j-1}\beta^{j-1})}_{v_1^j} \ln k$$

Using Geometric Series, we know that

$$v_1 = \lim_{j \rightarrow \infty} v_1^j = \frac{\alpha}{1 - \alpha\beta}$$

Hence, the Value function converges to

$$V(k) = \text{const.} + \frac{\alpha}{1 - \alpha\beta} \ln k$$

which is exactly what we have above by the Guess and Verify method.

#### 4.5.2 Euler Equation Iteration

Consider the Ramsey model with log utility, full depreciation and  $y_t = Ak_t^\alpha$ .

$$\begin{aligned} &\max \sum_{t=0}^{\infty} \beta^t \ln c_t, \\ &\text{s.t. } c_t + k_{t+1} = Ak_t^\alpha \end{aligned}$$

The Euler equation becomes

$$\frac{1}{c_t} = \frac{1}{c_{t+1}} A\alpha\beta k_{t+1}^{\alpha-1} = \alpha\beta \frac{1}{c_{t+1}} \frac{y_{t+1}}{k_{t+1}}$$

The Transversality condition

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \beta^T u'(c_T) k_{t+T} = \beta^T \frac{k_{t+T}}{c_T} 0.$$

Using the budget constraint

$$c_t + k_{t+1} = y_t$$

and adding 1 to both sides

$$\frac{c_t + k_{t+1}}{c_t} = 1 + \alpha\beta \frac{c_{t+1} + k_{t+2}}{c_{t+1}} \tag{4.12}$$

Define

$$z_t = \frac{c_t + k_{t+1}}{c_t} \equiv \frac{y_t}{c_t}$$

Iterating (4.12), we get

$$\begin{aligned} z_t &= 1 + \alpha\beta z_{t+1} \\ &= 1 + \alpha\beta + (\alpha\beta)^2 z_{t+2} \\ &= \sum_{t=0}^{\infty} (\alpha\beta)^t + \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} (\alpha\beta)^T z_{t+T} \\ &= \frac{1}{1 - \alpha\beta} \text{ since } \alpha\beta < 1 \text{ and the transversality condition holds} \end{aligned}$$

If we use the definition of  $z_t$ , it is easy to solve

$$\begin{aligned} c_t &= (1 - \alpha\beta)y_t, \\ k_{t+1} &= \alpha\beta y_t. \end{aligned}$$

**Ex. 4.3.** (Capital Adjustment Cost) Here, I use the notes by [Richter](#).

$$\max \sum_{t=0}^{\infty} \beta^t [\ln c_t + \gamma(1 - n_t)]$$

he budget constraint, find  $c_t$ , subject to

$$\begin{aligned} c_t + i_t &= y_t = Ak_{t-1}^{\alpha}n_t^{1-\alpha}, \\ k_t &= h(i_t, k_{t-1}) = i_t^{\delta}k_{t-1}^{1-\delta} \end{aligned}$$

where  $\delta$  measures the size of the adjustment cost,  $n_t$  is works worked.  $k_0 > 0$  is given. Except for the last equation, assume  $n_{t+1} = n_t = 1$  (exogenous).

1. Construct the Bellman equation (The policy function is  $i_t$ ) and find Euler.
2. Guess the Value function  $V(k) = E + F \ln k$ , find the Value Function.
3. From there, use the Euler equation to find  $i_t$ , and then  $c_t$  using the constraint.
4. Use Euler Equation Iteration, find  $i_t$ .
5. Do the same thing with the above exercise, but consider labor  $n_t$  as endogenous.

## 4.6 Programming

**Python code:** [on Github](#). For this exercise, we use parameters in [McCandless \(2008\)](#) where  $\alpha = 0.36$ ,  $\delta = 0.1$ ,  $\beta = 0.98$ .

```

import numpy as np
import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
from scipy.optimize import minimize_scalar

# Define global variables
vlast = np.zeros(100)
k0 = np.arange(0.06, 6.06, 0.06)
beta = 0.98
delta = 0.1
theta = 0.36
numits = 240

# Function to calculate the value
def valfun(k):
    global vlast, beta, delta, theta, kt
    g = np.interp(k, k0, vlast) #smooth the line
    kk = kt**theta - k + (1 - delta) * kt
    if kk <= 0:
        val = -888 - 800 * abs(kk)
    else:
        val = np.log(kk) + beta * g
    return -val

# Initialize arrays
v = np.zeros(100)
kt1 = np.zeros(100)

# Begin recursive calculations
for k in range(1, numits + 1):
    for j in range(100):
        kt = (j + 1) * 0.06
        ktp1 = minimize_scalar(
            valfun,
            bounds=(0.01, 6.2),
            method='bounded'
        ).x
        v[j] = -valfun(ktp1)
        kt1[j] = ktp1

    if k % 48 == 0:
        plt.plot(k0, v)
        plt.draw()

    vlast = v.copy()

plt.show()

# Plot the policy function
plt.plot(k0, kt1)
plt.show()

```

Matlab code: [on Github](#)

```

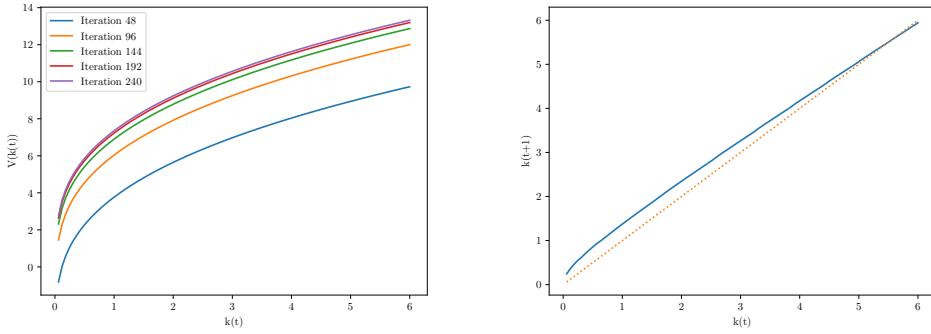
function val=rdm_valfun(k)
    global vlast beta delta theta k0 kt
    %smooth out the previous value function
    g = interp1(k0, vlast, k, 'linear');
    %calculate consumption with given params
    kk = kt^theta - k + (1-delta)*kt;
        if kk <= 0
            %trick to keep values from going negative
            val = -888-800*abs(kk);
        else
            %calculate the value function at k
            val = log(kk) + beta*g;
        end
    %change the value of negative since "fminbnd" finds minimum
    val = -val;

```

```

global vlast beta delta theta k0 kt
hold off
hold all
%set initial conditions
vlast = zeros(1,100);
k0 = 0.06:0.06:6;
beta = .98;
delta = .1;
theta = .36;
numits = 240;
%begin recursive calculations
for k = 1:numits
    for j = 1:100
        kt = j*.06;
        %find the maximum of the value function
        ktp1 = fminbnd(@rdm_valfun, 0.01, 6.2);
        v(j) = -rdm_valfun(ktp1);
        kt1(j) = ktp1;
    end
    if k/48 == round(k/48)
        %plot the steps in finding the value function
        plot(k0, v)
        drawnow
    end
    vlast = v;
end
hold off
%plot the final policy function
plot(k0, kt1)

```



**Fig. 4.2.** Results of Value Function Iteration.

## 4.7 Steady States and Stability

For this section, let us deal with the Ramsey model with logarithmic preferences, Cobb-Douglas technology, and no technological progress (similar to RCK in Ex. 4.1).

$$\max_{c_t, k_{t+1}} \sum_{t=0}^{\infty} \beta^t \ln(c_t), \quad (4.13)$$

$$k_{t+1} = k_t^\alpha + (1 - \delta)k_t - c_t \quad (4.14)$$

Consumption can be expressed as

$$c_t = k_t^\alpha + (1 - \delta)k_t - k_{t+1}. \quad (4.15)$$

The Euler equation is

$$\frac{c_{t+1}}{\beta c_t} = \alpha k_{t+1}^{\alpha-1} + (1 - \delta) \quad (4.16)$$

### 4.7.1 The Steady State

We can derive the steady states by letting  $c_{t+1} = c_t = \bar{c}$  and  $k_{t+1} = k_t = \bar{k}$ . The Euler equation becomes

$$1/\beta = \alpha \bar{k}^{\alpha-1} + (1 - \delta)$$

So that

$$\bar{k} = \left( \frac{\alpha\beta}{1 - (1 - \delta)\beta} \right)^{1/(1-\alpha)}, \quad (4.17)$$

$$\bar{c} = \bar{k}^\alpha - \delta \bar{k} \quad (4.18)$$

$$= \left( \frac{1 - \beta[1 - (1 - \alpha)\delta]}{\alpha\beta} \right) \left( \frac{\alpha\beta}{1 - (1 - \delta)\beta} \right)^{1/(1-\alpha)}.$$

### 4.7.2 Stability

To investigate the stability around this steady state, we can apply the linear approximation that we have learned from Section 1.2.3. What we need has the form

$$\begin{pmatrix} k_{t+1} - \bar{k} \\ c_{t+1} - \bar{c} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} A & B \\ C & D \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} k_t - \bar{k} \\ c_t - \bar{c} \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.19)$$

Near the steady state  $(\bar{c}, \bar{k})$  we have

$$\begin{aligned} c_t &\approx \bar{c} + (c_t - \bar{c}), \\ k_t^\alpha + (1 - \delta)k_t &\approx \bar{k}^\alpha + (1 - \delta)\bar{k} + f'(\bar{k})(k_t - \bar{k}), \\ &= \bar{k}^\alpha + (1 - \delta)\bar{k} + \alpha\bar{k}^{\alpha-1}(k_t - \bar{k}), \\ k_{t+1} &\approx \bar{k} + (k_t - \bar{k}). \end{aligned}$$

Substituting these into the **budget constraint** (4.15)

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{c} + (c_t - \bar{c}) &= \bar{k}^\alpha + (1 - \delta)\bar{k} + \alpha\bar{k}^{\alpha-1}(k_t - \bar{k}) - k_{t+1} \\ \Leftrightarrow \bar{k}^\alpha - \delta\bar{k} + (c_t - \bar{c}) &= \bar{k}^\alpha + (1 - \delta)\bar{k} + (1/\beta)(k_t - \bar{k}) - k_{t+1} \end{aligned}$$

Rearranging

$$(k_{t+1} - \bar{k}) = (1/\beta)(k_t - \bar{k}) - (c_t - \bar{c}) \quad (4.20)$$

Next, we need one more equation containing  $c_{t+1} - \bar{c}$ , let us use the **Euler equation** and log-linearize it

$$\ln c_{t+1} - \ln c_t - \ln \beta = \ln[\alpha k_{t+1}^{\alpha-1} + (1 - \delta)]$$

At the steady state, since  $c_{t+1} = c_t = \bar{c}$

$$\ln \bar{c} - \ln \bar{c} - \ln \beta = \ln[\alpha \bar{k}^{\alpha-1} + (1 - \delta)]$$

Take the first minus the second equation to obtain

$$(\ln c_{t+1} - \ln \bar{c}) - (\ln c_t - \ln \bar{c}) = \ln[\alpha k_{t+1}^{\alpha-1} + (1 - \delta)] - \ln[\alpha \bar{k}^{\alpha-1} + (1 - \delta)] \quad (4.21)$$

Near the steady state  $(\bar{c}, \bar{k})$  we have

$$\begin{aligned} \ln c_{t+1} - \ln \bar{c} &\approx [\ln(\bar{c})]'(c_{t+1} - \bar{c}) = \frac{1}{\bar{c}}(c_{t+1} - \bar{c}), \\ \ln c_t - \ln \bar{c} &\approx \frac{1}{\bar{c}}(c_t - \bar{c}), \\ \ln[\alpha k_{t+1}^{\alpha-1} + (1 - \delta)] - \ln[\alpha \bar{k}^{\alpha-1} + (1 - \delta)] &\approx [\ln(\alpha \bar{k}^{\alpha-1} + (1 - \delta))]'(k_{t+1} - \bar{k}) \\ &= \frac{\alpha(\alpha - 1)\bar{k}^{\alpha-2}}{\alpha \bar{k}^{\alpha-1} + (1 - \delta)}(k_{t+1} - \bar{k}) \\ &= \frac{\alpha(\alpha - 1)\bar{k}^{\alpha-2}}{1/\beta}(k_{t+1} - \bar{k}) \\ &= \beta\alpha(\alpha - 1)\bar{k}^{\alpha-2}(k_{t+1} - \bar{k}) \end{aligned}$$

Plugging back to (4.21) yields

$$\frac{1}{\bar{c}}(c_{t+1} - \bar{c}) - \frac{1}{\bar{c}}(c_t - \bar{c}) = \beta\alpha(\alpha - 1)\bar{k}^{\alpha-2}(k_{t+1} - \bar{k}) \quad (4.22)$$

Rearranging

$$\beta\alpha(\alpha - 1)\bar{k}^{\alpha-2}(k_{t+1} - \bar{k}) - \frac{1}{\bar{c}}(c_{t+1} - \bar{c}) = -\frac{1}{\bar{c}}(c_t - \bar{c}) \quad (4.23)$$

Combining (4.20) and (4.23) yields the system

$$\begin{aligned} (k_{t+1} - \bar{k}) + 0 \cdot (c_{t+1} - \bar{c}) &= (1/\beta)(k_t - \bar{k}) - (c_t - \bar{c}), \\ \beta\alpha(\alpha - 1)\bar{k}^{\alpha-2}(k_{t+1} - \bar{k}) - \frac{1}{\bar{c}}(c_{t+1} - \bar{c}) &= 0 \cdot (k_t - \bar{k}) - \frac{1}{\bar{c}}(c_t - \bar{c}) \end{aligned}$$

Write this in matrix form

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ \beta\alpha(\alpha-1)\bar{k}^{\alpha-2} & -1/\bar{c} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} k_{t+1} - \bar{k} \\ c_{t+1} - \bar{c} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1/\beta & -1 \\ 0 & -1/\bar{c} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} k_t - \bar{k} \\ c_t - \bar{c} \end{pmatrix}$$

To transform it into a form similar to (4.19), we do as follows

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix} k_{t+1} - \bar{k} \\ c_{t+1} - \bar{c} \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ \beta\alpha(\alpha-1)\bar{k}^{\alpha-2} & -1/\bar{c} \end{pmatrix}^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} 1/\beta & -1 \\ 0 & -1/\bar{c} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} k_t - \bar{k} \\ c_t - \bar{c} \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ \bar{c}\beta\alpha(\alpha-1)\bar{k}^{\alpha-2} & -\bar{c} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1/\beta & -1 \\ 0 & -1/\bar{c} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} k_t - \bar{k} \\ c_t - \bar{c} \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1/\beta & -1 \\ \bar{c}\alpha(\alpha-1)\bar{k}^{\alpha-2} & -\bar{c}\beta\alpha(\alpha-1)\bar{k}^{\alpha-2} + 1 \end{pmatrix}}_{\mathbf{J}} \begin{pmatrix} k_t - \bar{k} \\ c_t - \bar{c} \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

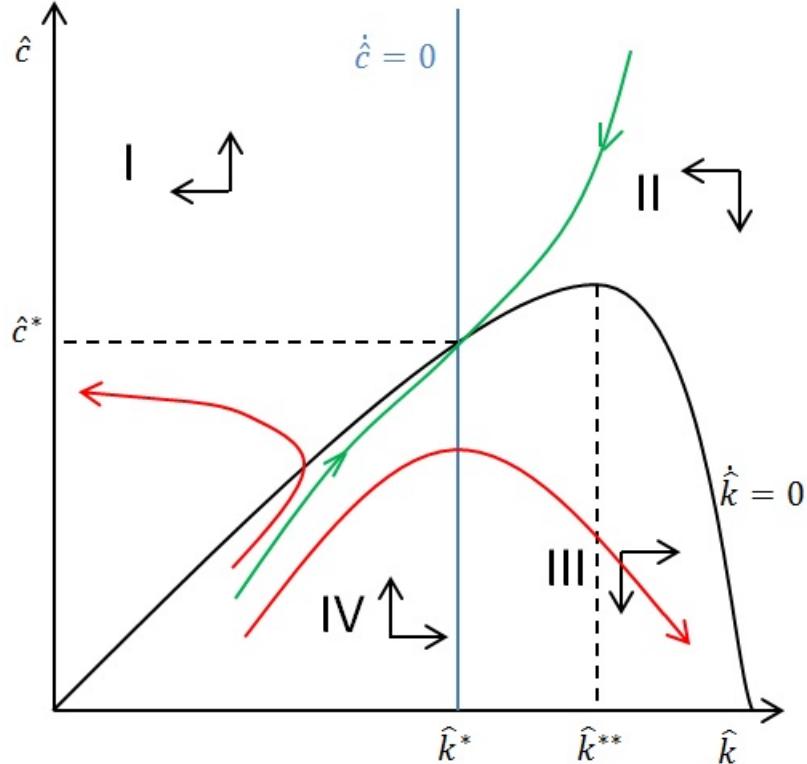
The Trace and Determinant of  $\mathbf{J}$  are

$$\begin{aligned} \text{tr}(\mathbf{J}) &= 1/\beta - \bar{c}\beta\alpha(\alpha-1)\bar{k}^{\alpha-2} + 1 \\ \det \mathbf{J} &= 1/\beta \end{aligned}$$

Since  $\alpha < 1$ , the term  $A = -\bar{c}\beta\alpha(\alpha-1)\bar{k}^{\alpha-2} > 0$ , hence

$$|1 + \det \mathbf{J}| = 1/\beta + 1 < \text{tr}(\mathbf{J}) = 1/\beta + A$$

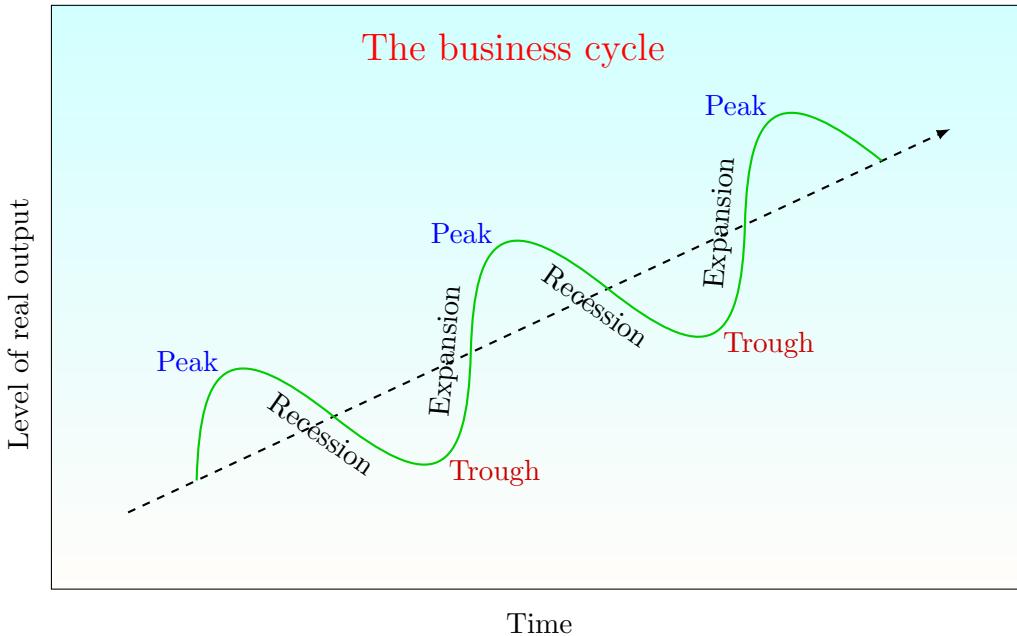
so the steady state is a saddle point. Just like what we have discussed.



**Fig. 4.3.** The Phase Diagram of RCK (revisit)

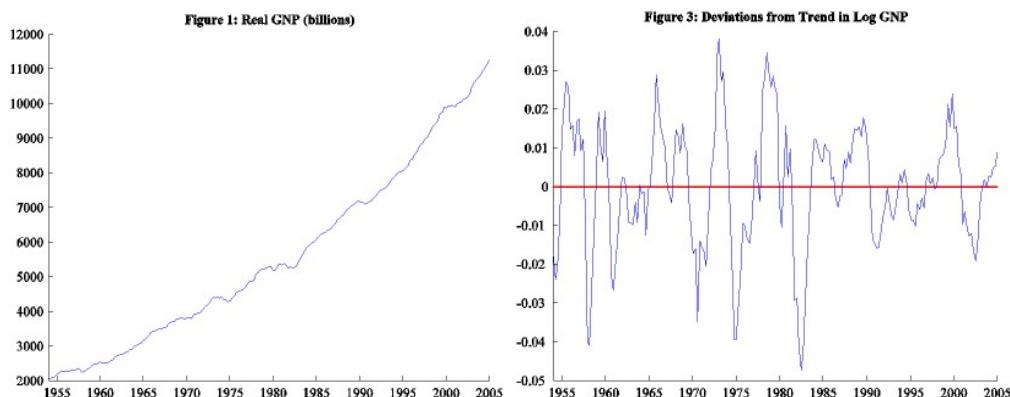
## 4.8 Stochasticity and Real Business Cycle

“Business cycles are a type of fluctuation found in the aggregate economic activity of nations that organize their work mainly in business enterprises: a cycle consists of expansions occurring at about the same time in many economic activities, followed by similarly general recessions, contractions, and revivals which merge into the expansion phase of the next cycle; in duration, business cycles vary from more than one year to ten or twelve years; they are not divisible into shorter cycles of similar characteristics with amplitudes approximating their own.” (Burns and Mitchell, 1946)



**Fig. 4.4.** Illustration of Business Cycle. Source: [tex.stackexchange.com](http://tex.stackexchange.com)

Empirical evidence:



**Fig. 4.5.** US economic growth's fluctuations (1954–2005)

Causes:

1. Random shocks that average out over time (Slutzky, 1937).
2. (Keynesian/NK): when monetary policies go loose, transactions expand, create inflation, and then policies are changed to tighten, the economy contracts. (Samuelson, 1939; Galí, 2015).

3. (**Real Business Cycle**/ Chicago): Technological changes due to innovation in the real economy, not nominal (Kydland and Prescott, 1982).
4. (Debt Cycle): expansion of credit yields economic expansions, net contraction causes recessions (Minsky and Kaufman, 2008) (MMT is influenced by him).
5. (Production Cycle): life-cycle of marketable goods (Vernon, 1966).
6. (Political Cycle): incumbent politicians encourage prosperity before elections in order to ensure re-election – and make the citizens pay for it with recessions afterwards. (Kalecki, 1943; Nordhaus, 1975; Rogoff and Sibert, 1988).

#### 4.8.1 Simple Stochastic Model

The backbone of DSGE. The economy maximizes the **expected** lifetime utility

$$\max_{c_t, k_{t+1}} E_0 \sum_{t=0}^{\infty} \beta^t u(c_t)$$

subject to

$$c_t + k_{t+1} = A_t f(k_t) + (1 - \delta)k_t,$$

where  $A_t$  is the state of technology. The stochastic process can be

1. Independent of past events

$$A_t = \begin{cases} A_1 & \text{with probability } p_1 \\ A_2 & \text{with probability } p_2 \end{cases}$$

Assume that

$$\begin{aligned} p_1 + p_2 &= 1, \\ A_1 &> A_2 \end{aligned}$$

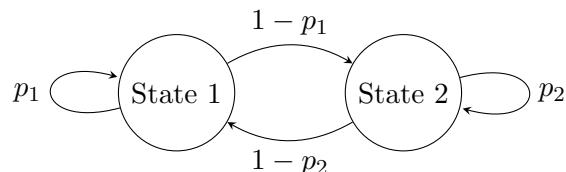
then this is simply a Markov chain process with a Transition matrix  $\mathbf{T}$

$$\mathbf{T} = \begin{pmatrix} p_1 & 1 - p_1 \\ 1 - p_2 & p_2 \end{pmatrix}$$

If  $p_t(\text{dist}(A_1), \text{dist}(A_2))$  is the distributions of the states at time  $t$ , then

$$\underbrace{p_{t+1}}_{2 \times 1} = \underbrace{\mathbf{T}}_{2 \times 2} \times \underbrace{p_t}_{2 \times 1}$$

which has a stationary distribution  $p_{t+1} = p_t = p$



2. AR(1) process with an i.i.d random variable  $\varepsilon$

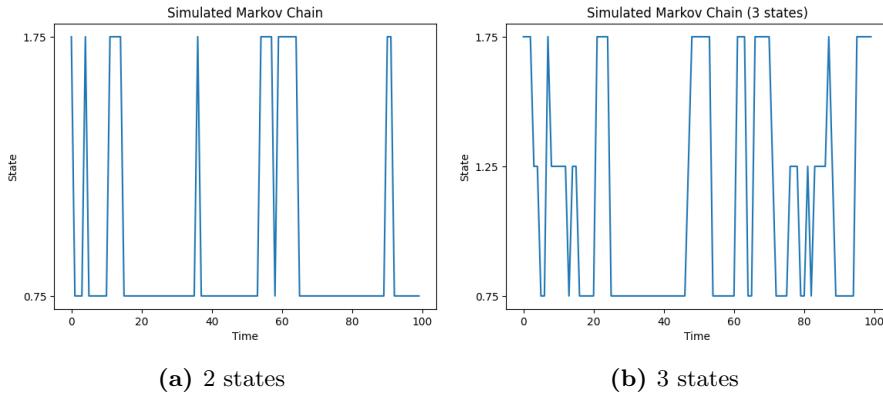
$$A_{t+1} = A_t^\rho \exp(\varepsilon), \quad (0 \leq \rho < 1)$$

Log-linearized

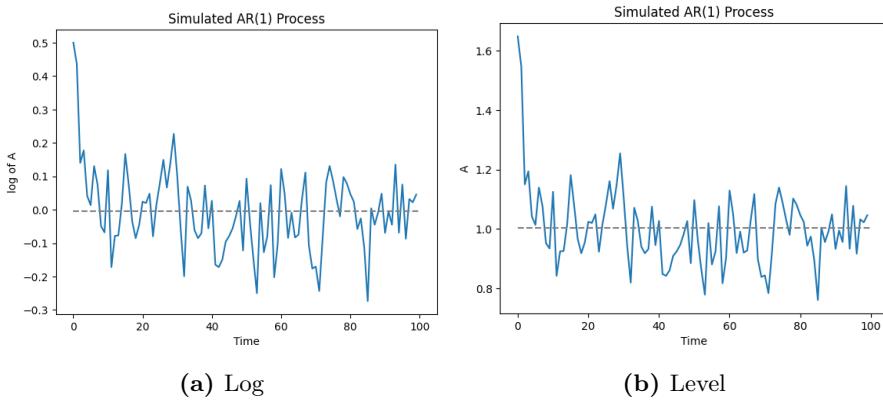
$$\begin{aligned} \ln A_t &= \rho \ln A_{t-1} + \varepsilon_t^A, \\ |\rho| &< 1, \\ \varepsilon_t^A &\sim N(\mu, \sigma_A^2), \quad \sigma_A > 0. \end{aligned}$$

Note that this is log form. To convert to level, take  $\exp(A_t)$ . The higher the variance  $\sigma^2$ , the more violent the fluctuations become and higher  $\rho$  implies shocks are more persistent. Overtime, the fluctuations should even out and vanish as white noise, hence  $\mu$  is often set as 0.

### Illustrations:



**Fig. 4.6.** Markov Process Examples.



**Fig. 4.7.** AR(1) Process Example.

As before, to solve this problem, we first set up the Bellman equation

$$V(k_t, A_t) = \max_{k_{t+1}} u(A_t f(k_t) + (1 - \delta)k_t - k_{t+1}) - \beta E_t V(k_{t+1}, A_{t+1}) \quad (4.24)$$

Let assume a log linear utility  $u = \log(c)$  and Cobb-Douglas production  $f(k) = k^\alpha$ , then:

$$V(k_t, A_t) = \max_{k_{t+1}} \ln(A_t k_t^\alpha + (1 - \delta)k_t - k_{t+1}) - \beta E_t V(k_{t+1}, A_{t+1})$$

Take FOC wrt to the choice variable  $k_{t+1}$

$$\frac{\partial V(k_t, A_t)}{\partial k_{t+1}} = 0$$

which implies

$$\frac{1}{c_t} = \beta E_t \frac{\partial V(k_{t+1}, A_{t+1})}{\partial k_{t+1}}$$

The Benveniste-Scheinkman Equation

$$\frac{\partial V(k_t, A_t)}{\partial k_t} = [A_t f'(k_t) + (1 - \delta)] u'(c_t)$$

One step forward

$$\frac{\partial V(k_{t+1}, A_{t+1})}{\partial k_{t+1}} = [A_{t+1} f'(k_{t+1}) + (1 - \delta)] u'(c_{t+1}) = \frac{A_{t+1} f'(k_{t+1}) + (1 - \delta)}{c_{t+1}}$$

The Euler equation

$$\frac{c_{t+1}}{c_t} = \beta [A_{t+1} f'(k_{t+1}) + (1 - \delta)].$$

The contingent plan of consumption now depends on the state variable  $k_t$  and on the realization of the shock variable  $A_t$ . <sup>(2)</sup>

Assume that the technology shock follows an AR(1) process such that:

$$A_{t+1} = A_t^\rho \exp(\varepsilon)$$

In the steady-state, there will be no shocks. Thus

$$\varepsilon = 0, \quad (4.25)$$

$$\bar{A} = 1^{1/(1-\rho)} = 1, \quad (4.26)$$

$$\bar{k} = \left[ \frac{\alpha \beta \bar{A}}{1 - \beta(1 - \delta)} \right]^{1/(1-\alpha)}, \quad (4.27)$$

$$\bar{c} = \bar{A} \bar{k}^\alpha - \delta \bar{k}. \quad (4.28)$$

**Ex. 4.4.** Instead of Technological Shock, let us do Taste Shock  $v_t$  this time.

$$\max_{c_t, k_{t+1}} E_0 \sum_0^{\infty} \beta^t v_t \frac{c_t^{1-\theta}}{1-\theta}$$

subject to

$$\begin{aligned} k_{t+1} &= k_t^\alpha + (1 - \delta) k_t, \\ \ln(v_t) &= \rho v_t + u, \quad |\rho| < 1, u \sim N(0, \sigma^2), \sigma > 0 \end{aligned}$$

Derive the FOCs, Euler, Steady States

---

<sup>(2)</sup> Guess and Verify Method can help us find the Value function for this case. Assume that  $u = \ln(c)$  and  $\delta = 1$ . In particular, the conjecture should be

$$V(k_t, A_t) = E + F \ln k_t + G \ln A_t$$

You should be able to find the Policy functions as follows

$$c_t = (1 - \alpha \beta) A_t k_t^\alpha.$$

and the motion of capital

$$k_{t+1} = \alpha \beta A_t k_t^\alpha$$

As always, Guess and Verify works for a very limited number of cases, such as full depreciation.

### 4.8.2 Simulations

Notice that if we use the AR(1) process,  $A_t$  is fundamental expressed in log form. We can trace out how capital accumulation evolves over time in response to a shock in  $A_t$ . This is called an **impulse response function**. Since the model is stochastic, it is not easy to work out the optimal grid- $k$  as in the deterministic case, we use a specialized software called Dynare.

Simulations of the impulse response functions use [Dynare](#) with [MATLAB](#). Tohoku Students can apply for license and use MATLAB for free. [See here for detail.](#)

```

var c k y A; // Declare endogenous variables
varexo e; // Declare exogenous shock
predetermined_variables k;

parameters beta rho delta alpha; // Declare parameters
beta = 0.99; // Discount factor
rho = 0.95; // Autoregressive coefficient for A
delta = 0.02; // Depreciation rate
alpha = 0.36; // Production elasticity of capital

// Define the model equations
model;
y = exp(A)*k^alpha;
k(+1) = y - c + (1-delta)*k;
c(+1) = c * beta * (alpha*exp(A(+1))*k(+1)^(alpha-1) + 1 - delta) ;
A = rho*A(-1) + e;
end;

initval; // Initial (at the steady-state)
c = ((1 - beta*(1-(1-alpha)*delta))/(alpha*beta)) *
((alpha*beta)/(1-(1-delta)*beta))^(1/(1-alpha));
k = ((alpha*beta)/(1-(1-delta)*beta))^(1/(1-alpha));
A = 0;
e = 0;
end;

steady; // check steady-state

shocks; // declare shocks
var e; stderr 0.1;
end;

stoch_simul(irf=100) A y k c;

```

Configuration and run in the Command Window

```

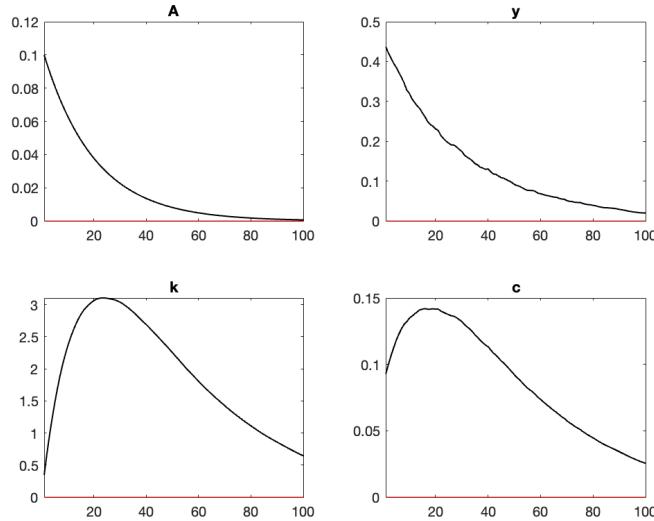
addpath .../dynare/5.4/matlab
cd .../working_dir
dynare simulation_file.mod

```

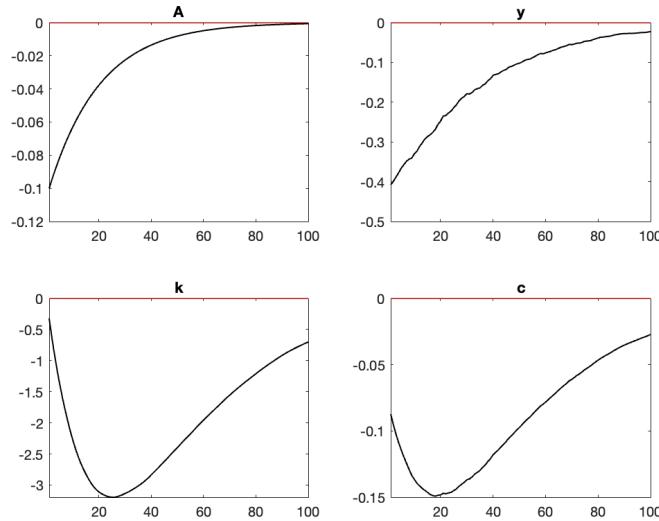
The previous code generates a Positive Productivity Shock. If you want a Negative Productivity Shock, replace the **plus iid noise** with **minus iid noise**.

```
A = rho*A(-1) - e;
```

### Results:



(a) Positive Productivity shock



(b) Negative Productivity shock

**Fig. 4.8.** Impulse Response function.

If you want to write your own code without relying on a package like Dynare:

1. [A Toolkit for Analyzing Nonlinear Dynamic Stochastic Models Easily](#)
2. [The Fundamentals of Economic Dynamics and Policy Analyses : Learning through Numerical Examples. Part III. Stochastic Dynamic General Equilibrium](#)
3. [Chris Edmond: Teaching](#)

### 4.8.3 Real Business Cycle with Labor Choice

We now include Labor choice as in standard RBC literature. Let's assume the Household's Preferences are

$$\max E_0 \left( \sum_0^{\infty} \beta^t u(C_t, L_t) \right)$$

where

$$u(C_t, L_t) = \ln(C_t) + \gamma \ln(1 - L_t)$$

Production

$$Y_t = A_t^{1-\alpha} K_t^\alpha L_t^{1-\alpha}$$

And

(capital accumulation)	$K_{t+1} = I_t + (1 - \delta)K_t,$
(national accounts)	$Y_t = I_t + C_t,$
(technology shocks)	$\ln A_t = \rho \ln A_{t-1} + \varepsilon, \quad ( \rho  < 1, \varepsilon \sim N(0, \sigma^2))$

Assume that  $0 < \alpha < 1, \theta > 0, 0 < \gamma < 1, 0 < \beta < 1, K_0 > 0$ . In this problem, there are 2 control variables  $C, L$ , 1 state variable  $K$ , and 1 shock  $A$ .

1. Write down the Bellman equation and derive the FOCs.
2. Derive the Euler equations.
3. Find the steady state.
4. Let  $\delta = 1$ , use Guess and Verify to find the Policy functions.

**Ex. 4.5.** Perform the same thing but for different utility functions

$$1. \quad u(C_t, L_t) = \ln(C_t) + \theta \frac{(1 - L_t)^{1-\gamma}}{1 - \gamma}$$

$$2. \quad u(C_t, L_t) = \frac{(C_t^\sigma (1 - L_t)^{1-\sigma})^{1-\gamma}}{1 - \gamma}$$

**Ex. 4.6.** Simulation Exercises.

1. Use Dynare, simulate the Taste Shock problem and  $C, L$  problem.
2. If you have Stata, you can use it to solve a DSGE problem. [Documentation](#).
3. You might be interested in this [EconMacro](#) blog.

```

webuse usmacro2

matrix param          = (0.99, 0.36, 0.025, 2, 0.9)

matrix colnames param = beta   alpha delta chi rho

dsgenl  (      1/c = {beta}*(1/F.c)*(1+F.r-{delta}) )
(      r = {alpha}*y/k
(      y = z*k^{alpha})*h^{1-alpha}
(      w = (1-{alpha})*(y/h)
({chi})/(1-h) = w/c
(      y = c + i
(      F.k = i + (1-{delta})*k
(      ln(F.z) = {rho}*ln(z)
, observed(y) unobserved(c i w h r)
endostate(k) exostate(z)
solve noidencheck from(param)

estat steady

estat policy, compact

estat transition, compact

irf create model2, step(20)

irf graph irf, impulse(z) response(y c i h w z) irf(model2) byopts(yrescale)

```

# Chapter 5

## Optimal Control

Also known as Continuous-Time Optimization. Let us consider the problem

$$\max_{\{c_t\}_{t=0}^{\infty}} e^{-\rho t} u(c_t) dt, \quad (5.1)$$

$$s.t. c_t + \dot{k}_t = f(k_t) - \delta k_t. \quad (5.2)$$

The control variable is  $c_t$ , and the state variable is  $k_t$ . Assume a nonzero initial condition, the constraint gives us the equation of motion for the state variable

(transition equation)	$\dot{k}_t = f(k_t) - \delta k_t - c_t,$
(initial condition)	$k_0 > 0$

### 5.1 Lagrangian Method

Everything begins with the Lagrangian function. In fact, it's more intuitive to start here than going straight to Hamiltonian:

$$\mathcal{L} = \int_0^{\infty} e^{-\rho t} u(c(t)) dt + \int_0^{\infty} \lambda(t) [f(k(t)) - \delta k(t) - c(t) - \dot{k}(t)] dt$$

It's the sum of 2 integrals with the same boundary and the same variables (time), so we can sum them up and rewrite the Lagrangian:

$$\mathcal{L} = \int_0^{\infty} \left\{ e^{-\rho t} u(c(t)) + \lambda(t) [f(k(t)) - \delta k(t) - c(t) - \dot{k}(t)] \right\} dt$$

We want to maximize  $c(t)$  with respect to  $k(t)$ , but  $\dot{k}(t)$  is not independent with  $k(t)$ . So  $\dot{k}(t)$  needs to be got rid of, and can somehow be expressed in terms of  $k(t)$ .

First, separate the  $\dot{k}(t)$  term from the integral.

$$\mathcal{L} = \int_0^{\infty} \{e^{-\rho t} u(c(t)) + \lambda(t) [F(k(t)) - \delta k(t) - c(t)]\} dt - \int_0^{\infty} \lambda(t) \dot{k}(t) dt$$

Using integration by parts for the second integral term:

$$\int_0^{\infty} \lambda(t) \dot{k}(t) dt = \lambda(t) k(t) \Big|_0^{\infty} - \int_0^{\infty} \dot{\lambda}(t) k(t) dt = \lambda(\infty) k(\infty) - \lambda(0) k(0) - \int_0^{\infty} \dot{\lambda}(t) k(t) dt$$

Notice that if  $k$  at time  $t = \infty$  is indeed  $\infty$ , and  $\lambda(\infty)$  (the penalty term) is also non-zero, there is no reason to consume now. The household will wait until the very

end of time close to infinity since the utility is essentially infinity. On the other hand, if  $k$  at  $t = \infty$  is  $-\infty$ , there is no reason to save, it's better to consume everything and leave nothing left. Such extreme cases would appear if  $\lambda(\infty)k(\infty)$  is not bounded, and it will dominate everything.

To counter that problem, we introduce the transversality (no Ponzi scheme) condition.

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \lambda(t)k(t) = 0$$

We also assume  $k(0)$  is given and is a constant (the economy needs something to start with), meaning it will disappear when we derive the FOC. As it is given, there should be no penalty term ( $\lambda(0) = 0$ ). Thus, we have:

$$\int_0^\infty \lambda(t)\dot{k}(t)dt = - \int_0^\infty \dot{\lambda}(t)k(t)dt$$

Plugging back to the Lagrangian  $\mathcal{L}$ , we obtain:

$$\mathcal{L} = \int_0^\infty \left\{ e^{-\rho t}u(c(t)) + \lambda(t)[F(k(t)) - \delta k(t) - c(t)] \right\} dt + \int_0^\infty \dot{\lambda}(t)k(t)dt$$

Sum them back to under 1 integral again:

$$\mathcal{L} = \int_0^\infty \left\{ e^{-\rho t}u(c(t)) + \lambda(t)[F(k(t)) - \delta k(t) - c(t)] + \dot{\lambda}(t)k(t) \right\} dt$$

The Lagrangian enables us to maximize the function at each point in time, so we only care about maximizing the functional form inside the integral (we don't care about time anymore). Rewrite the term inside the integral as  $L$ , and call this the \*modified Lagrangian\*. The following two expressions are equivalent.

$$L = e^{-\rho t}u(c(t)) + \lambda(t)[f(k(t)) - \delta k(t) - c(t)] - \lambda(t)\dot{k}(t) \quad (5.3)$$

$$L = \underbrace{e^{-\rho t}u(c(t)) + \lambda(t)[f(k(t)) - \delta k(t) - c(t)]}_{\text{Hamiltonian}} + \dot{\lambda}(t)k(t) \quad (5.4)$$

Terminologically speaking:  $c(t)$  is the control variable since it can jump (taking any value at any point in time). In contrast,  $k(t)$  is the state variable because it accumulates over time.  $\lambda(t)$  is the co-state variable (also known as \*shadow price\* in economics because it shows the marginal cost of violating the constraints at each point in time).

Sticking with the Lagrangian method, we derive the FOC:

$$(c(t)) : \frac{dL}{dc(t)} = e^{-\rho t}u'(c(t)) - \lambda(t) = 0 \quad (\text{using (5.3)}) \quad (5.5)$$

$$(k(t)) : \frac{dL}{dk(t)} = \lambda(t)[f'(k(t)) - \delta] + \dot{\lambda}(t) = 0 \quad (\text{using Eq.(5.4)}) \quad (5.6)$$

$$(\lambda(t)) : \frac{dL}{d\lambda(t)} = f(k(t)) - \delta k(t) - c(t) = 0 \quad (\text{using (5.3)}) \quad (5.7)$$

We need to get rid of  $\lambda$ . From  $(c(t))$  condition, we derive:

$$\lambda(t) = e^{-\rho t}u'(c(t))$$

Thus,  $\dot{\lambda}(t)$  can be derived as:

$$\dot{\lambda}(t) = \frac{d\lambda(t)}{dt} = -\rho e^{-\rho t} u'(c(t)) + e^{-\rho t} u''(c(t)) \dot{c}(t)$$

And we obtain:

$$\frac{\dot{\lambda}(t)}{\lambda(t)} = -\rho \frac{u'(c(t))}{u'(c(t))} + \frac{u''(c(t))}{u'(c(t))} \dot{c}(t) = -\rho + \frac{u''(c(t))}{u'(c(t))} \dot{c}(t)$$

We can explicitly derive the condition for a functional form of  $u$ , especially with CRRA (constant relative risk aversion). For simplicity, let  $u(c) = \ln(c)$ , then  $u'(c(t)) = \frac{1}{c(t)}$  and  $u''(c(t)) = \frac{-1}{c^2(t)}$ . Plugging back into the above equation, we obtain:

$$\frac{\dot{\lambda}(t)}{\lambda(t)} = -\rho - \frac{\dot{c}(t)}{c(t)} \quad (5)$$

From the FOC of  $k(t)$ , we know that:

$$-\frac{\dot{\lambda}(t)}{\lambda(t)} = f'(k(t)) - \delta$$

Combining with Eq. (5) yields the Euler equation:

$$\frac{\dot{c}(t)}{c(t)} = f'(k(t)) - \delta - \rho$$

This condition constitutes the optimal path of consumption chosen by the household.

## 5.2 Hamiltonian

A cookbook method (Pontryagin's maximum principle) for this problem. The maximum principle can be summarized as a series of steps with the economic intuition explained as follows ([Campante et al., 2021](#)).

1. Set at the present-value Hamiltonian

$$H_t = u(c_t) e^{-\rho t} + \lambda_t (\underbrace{f(k_t) - c_t - \delta k_t}_{\dot{k}_t}) \quad (5.8)$$

where  $\lambda_t$  is called the co-state variable. The Hamiltonian is similar to the way you obtain the Lagrangian (but without integral). The interpretation of the co-state variable  $\lambda_t$  is the same as the Lagrangian multiplier. It tells you the marginal benefit of a marginal addition to the stock of the state variable  $k_t$  (in economic jargon, it is called “the shadow value/ price of the state variable”), which is also the value of the state variable at  $t = 0$ .

2. Take the FOC of Hamiltonian wrt the control variable(s)

$$\frac{\partial H_t}{\partial c_t} = 0 \Leftrightarrow e^{-\rho t} u'(c_t) = \lambda_t. \quad (5.9)$$

This is legitimate since the Hamiltonian is static at each  $t$ , so the optimal value of the choice variable should be done in a static optimization fashion. (5.9) states that the marginal utility gain from increasing consumption has to be equal to the marginal cost ( $\lambda$ ) of not adding such amount to the stock of your assets (the state variable).

3. Derive the optimal path of the state and co-state variable(s)

$$\dot{k}_t = \frac{\partial H_t}{\partial \lambda_t} = f(k_t) - c_t - \delta k_t, \quad (5.10)$$

$$\dot{\lambda}_t = -\frac{\partial H_t}{\partial k_t} = -\lambda_t(f'(k_t) - \delta) \quad (5.11)$$

The Hamilton is static, but our model is dynamic. This means that, at any instant, we must figure out that whatever we leave for the next instant is consistent with optimization. This is the key insight into the problem. Furthermore, what we care about in an infinite time span can be broken down into a sequence of choices between the current instant and the next in an infinitesimally small time frame.

To figure out that path, the maximization principle tells you that you need to satisfy the co-state equations. The first equation (5.10) links one instant of the state variable to the next and must be satisfied at any time. The second equation (5.11) is an “asset pricing” condition. Basically, the term  $\dot{\lambda}_t$  is the appreciation in the marginal value of capital, so  $-\dot{\lambda}_t$  is its depreciation. If you carry more capital to the next, its value should depreciate more as the volume increase. The term  $\partial H/\partial k$ , on the other hand, shows the marginal return of capital at this instant, contributing to the utility and production (which are encompassed in the Hamiltonian). Obviously, the equilibrium is brought by equalizing the two terms. ([Read more](#))

4. Set the transversality condition

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \lambda_t k_t = 0. \quad (5.12)$$

While the transition (5.10), and Euler equations ((5.9), (5.11)) jointly govern the temporal behavior of consumption and capital (state variable), the initial and transversality conditions specify the state of the economy at the boundaries (i.e.,  $t = 0$  and  $t = \infty$ ). Initially, the economy must start with something it can work with –  $k_0 > 0$ . The transversality condition, in particular, prevents the over-accumulation of capital by requiring zero present value of the capital in an infinitely distant future.

In a finite time horizon (i.e., you must die at some point  $T$ ), it makes sense that  $\lambda(T) = 0$ , so you have no incentive to save for the next period, you must consume everything. However, things get more complicated as we progress to the infinite horizon. Without this equation, households will keep accumulating capital indefinitely as capital has value  $\lambda$  and households still have  $k_t$  in expense, which implies that a steady state cannot be secured. To prevent this case from happening, condition (5.12) is necessary. The requirement is that at the limit  $t \rightarrow \infty$ , if the terminal capital has a positive present value, then you must consume it all to make  $k(t) = 0$ . Otherwise, it must have zero valuation  $\lambda_t$  so that you are indifferent about leaving it unexploited. This transversality condition that imposes a non-negativity constraint on capital is also known as the “no-Ponzi scheme” condition

5. Derive the Euler equation relating the dynamics of the choice variable

$$\rho - \frac{u''(c_t)\dot{c}_t}{u'(c_t)} = f'(k_t) - \delta. \quad (5.13)$$

Ultimately, we are interested in the dynamic behavior of the control and state variable over time. This is done by taking (5.9) and differentiating both sides with respect to time (product and chain rule)

$$\dot{\lambda}_t = -\rho e^{-\rho t} u'(c_t) + e^{-\rho t} u''(c_t) \dot{c}_t \quad (5.14)$$

which is the co-state variable. Substituting it to (5.11), we have

$$-\rho e^{-\rho t} u'(c_t) + e^{-\rho t} u''(c_t) \dot{c}_t = -\lambda_t (f'(k_t) - \delta)$$

and using (5.9) for  $\lambda_t$ , we obtain

$$-\rho e^{-\rho t} u'(c_t) + e^{-\rho t} u''(c_t) \dot{c}_t = -e^{-\rho t} u'(c_t) (f'(k_t) - \delta)$$

Dividing both sides by  $e^{-\rho t} u'(c_t)$ , we obtain (5.13). If we assume a log utility function, then it is easy to obtain the same result with Lagrangian

$$\frac{\dot{c}_t}{c_t} = f'(k_t) - \delta - \rho.$$

Upon obtaining the Euler, you can use phase diagrams as introduced before to analyze the equilibrium. In this section, we learn how to apply Optimal Control through exercises.

### 5.3 Examples

**Example 5.1.** Let lifetime utility be

$$U = u_0 + \frac{u_1}{1+\rho} + \frac{u_2}{(1+\rho)^2} + \dots = \sum_0^{\infty} \frac{u_t}{(1+\rho)^t}$$

where  $\rho > 0$  is the discount rate. This can be written as

$$U = \int_{t=0}^{+\infty} e^{-\rho t} \ln(C_t) dt$$

Asset accumulates according to

$$\dot{K}_t = R_t K_t + W_t L - C_t$$

where labor supply is fixed at  $L$  for all  $t$ . The Hamiltonian

$$H_t = e^{-\rho t} \ln C_t + \lambda_t (R_t K_t + W_t L - C_t)$$

FOC(i) to the control variable

$$\frac{\partial H_t}{\partial C_t} = 0 \Leftrightarrow e^{-\rho t} C_t^{-1} = \lambda_t.$$

FOC(ii) of the state and co-state variables

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{K}_t &= \frac{\partial H_t}{\partial \lambda_t} = R_t K_t + W_t L - C_t \\ \dot{\lambda}_t &= -\frac{\partial H_t}{\partial K_t} = -\lambda_t R_t \end{aligned}$$

Transversality condition:

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} \lambda_t K_t = 0.$$

Differentiating both sides of FOC(i) to time

$$\dot{\lambda}_t = -\rho e^{-\rho t} C_t^{-1} - e^{-\rho t} C_t^{-2} \dot{C}_t$$

Plugging to the co-state FOC yields

$$-e^{-\rho t} C_t^{-1} R_t = -\rho e^{-\rho t} C_t^{-1} - e^{-\rho t} C_t^{-2} \dot{C}_t$$

Divide both sides by  $-e^{-\rho t} C_t^{-1}$  to obtain

$$R_t = \rho - C_t^{-1} \dot{C}_t$$

Rearranging to get the Euler

$$\frac{\dot{C}_t}{C_t} = R_t - \rho$$

Assuming a Cobb-Douglas production function

$$Y_t = A K_t^\alpha L^{1-\alpha}$$

so that

$$\begin{aligned} R_t &= \alpha A K_t^{\alpha-1} L^{1-\alpha}, \\ W_t &= (1-\alpha) A K_t^\alpha L^{-\alpha} \end{aligned}$$

Now, the Euler yields

$$\frac{\dot{C}_t}{C_t} = \alpha A K_t^{\alpha-1} L^{1-\alpha} - \rho$$

Capital accumulation now reads

$$\dot{K}_t = \alpha A K_t^\alpha L^{1-\alpha} + (1-\alpha) A K_t^\alpha L^{1-\alpha} - C_t = A K_t^\alpha L^{1-\alpha} - C_t$$

To find the steady-state equilibrium, set  $\dot{C}_t = \dot{K}_t = 0$  so that

$$\alpha A K_t^{\alpha-1} L^{1-\alpha} = \rho$$

which yields

$$\bar{K} = \left( \frac{\alpha A}{\rho} \right)^{1/(1-\alpha)} L$$

## 5.4 Exercises

**Ex. 5.1.** From Chu (2021, Ch. 4). Consider a Ramsey model with elastic labor supply (which is a deterministic case of RBC) where:

**Household** solves

$$\max_{c_t, \ell_t} U := \int_0^\infty e^{-\rho t} [\ln c_t + \beta \ln(1 - \ell_t)] dt$$

subject to

$$\dot{k}_t = R_t k_t + w_t \ell_t - c_t - \delta k_t$$

**Firm** solves

$$\max_{k_t, \ell_t} y_t = f(k_t) = A k_t^\alpha l_t^{1-\alpha} - R_t k_t - w_t \ell_t$$

1. Write down the current-value Hamiltonian.
2. Find the Euler equation
3. Write the equilibrium conditions for capital and labor market.
4. Find the steady state.

**Ex. 5.2.** The model is expanded to analyze government spending [Chu \(2021, Ch. 5\)](#).

**Household** solves

$$\max_{c_t, \ell_t} U := \int_0^\infty e^{-\rho t} [\ln c_t + \beta \ln(1 - \ell_t)] dt$$

subject to

$$\begin{aligned}\dot{k}_t &= R_t k_t + w_t \ell_t - c_t - \delta k_t - T_t, \\ T_t &= \gamma Y_t\end{aligned}$$

**Firm** solves

$$\max_{k_t, \ell_t} y_t = f(k_t) = A k_t^\alpha l_t^{1-\alpha} - R_t k_t - w_t \ell_t$$

1. Write down the current-value Hamiltonian.
2. Find the Euler equation
3. Write the equilibrium conditions for capital and labor market.
4. Find the steady state.
5. What happens to household's desire to work when  $\gamma$  increases?

**Ex. 5.3.** From [Michaillat \(2023\)](#) and [Acemoglu \(2008, p. 270\)](#). Consider the investment problem where

$$\max_{i_t} \int_0^{+\infty} e^{-rt} [f(k_t) - i_t - \phi(i_t)] dt$$

subject to

$$\begin{aligned}\phi(i_t) &= \frac{\chi}{2} \left( \frac{i_t^2}{k_t} \right), \\ \dot{k}_t &= i_t, \\ k_0 &> 0\end{aligned}$$

The interest rate  $r > 0$ , capital adjustment cost  $\chi > 0$ , and  $f(k_t) = k_t^\alpha$ .

1. Write down the current-value Hamiltonian. Denote  $q_t$  as the co-state variable.
2. Derive the optimal solutions.
3. Find the steady state



# Chapter 6

## Basics of Probability Theory, Brownian Motion, and Martingales

### 6.1 Probability Theory

#### 6.1.1 Probability space

Let  $\Omega$  be a (non-empty) sample space. A  $\sigma$ -algebra ( $\sigma$ -field) on  $\Omega$  is a family of subsets of such that

- the empty set  $\emptyset$  belongs to  $F$ ;
- if  $A$  belongs to  $F$ , then so does the complement  $\Omega \setminus A$ ;
- if  $A_1, A_2, \dots$  is a sequence of sets in  $F$ , then their union  $A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \dots$  also belongs to  $F$ .

Let  $F$  be a  $\sigma$ -algebra on  $\Omega$ . A Probability measure  $P$ , defined on  $F$ , is a function  $P : F \rightarrow [0, 1]$  such that

- $P(\Omega) = 1$ ;
- if  $A_1, A_2, \dots$  are pairwise disjoint sets (i.e.  $A_i \cap A_j \cap \dots = \emptyset$  for  $i \neq j$ ) belonging to  $F$ , then

$$P(A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \dots) = P(A_1) + P(A_2) + \dots$$

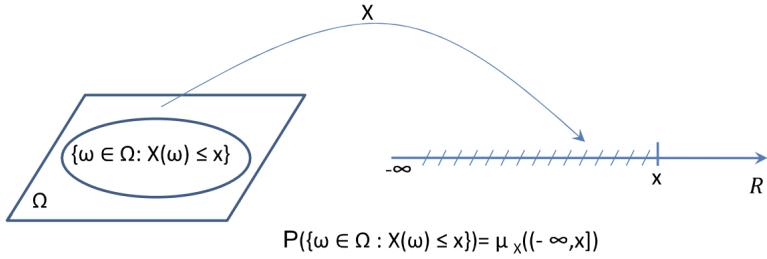
The triple  $(\Omega, F, P)$  is called a **probability space**. The sets belonging to  $F$  are called events.

#### 6.1.2 Random variables

Let  $(\Omega, F, P)$  be a probability space. A **random variable**  $X$  is a mapping from the sample space,  $\Omega$ , to another measurable space of possible values of  $X$  (state space)

$$X : \Omega \rightarrow R$$

with the property that  $X^{-1}((-\infty, x]) = \{\omega \in \Omega : X(\omega) \leq x\} \in F$  for all  $x \in R$ . We say that  $X$  is  $F$ -measurable.

**Fig. 6.1.** Mapping

The **distribution function** of  $X$ ,  $F_X : R \rightarrow [0, 1]$  is defined by

$$F_X(x) = P\{\omega \in \Omega : X(\omega) \leq x\} = P(X \leq x) = \mu_X((-\infty, x])$$

### 6.1.3 Expectations and conditional expectations

$$E(g(X)) = \int_R g(x)f_X(x)dx = \int_R g(x)dF_X(x) = \int_R g(x)d\mu_X(x)$$

$E(X|Y = y)$  is the mean of the conditional distribution of  $X$  given  $Y = y$ .  $E(X|Y)$  is a random variable and the tower rule states:

$$E(E(X|Y)) = E(X)$$

Similarly,

$$E(E(X|Y_1, \dots, Y_n)) = E(X)$$

$E(X|Y_1, \dots, Y_n)$  is the optimal estimator of  $X$  based on  $Y_1, \dots, Y_n$  in the sense that for every function  $h$

$$E[(X - E(X|Y_1, \dots, Y_n))^2] \leq E[(X - h(Y_1, \dots, Y_n))^2]$$

### 6.1.4 Stochastic processes

A stochastic process,  $X$ , is a collection (family) of random variables

$$X = \{X_t : t \in T\} = \{X_t(\omega), t \in T, \omega \in \Omega\}$$

Classification

- Discrete time stochastic processes,  $T = \{0, 1, 2, \dots\}$ ;
- Continuous time stochastic processes,  $T = [0, \infty)$  ( $T = R^+$ )

$X$  is a function of two variables:

- for a fixed instant of time  $t \in T$ , it is a random variable  $X_t = X_t(\omega), \omega \in \Omega$ .
- for a fixed random outcome  $\omega \in \Omega$ , it is a function of time  $X_t = X_t(\omega), t \in T$  (trajectory, realisation or sample path).

## 6.2 Brownian motion

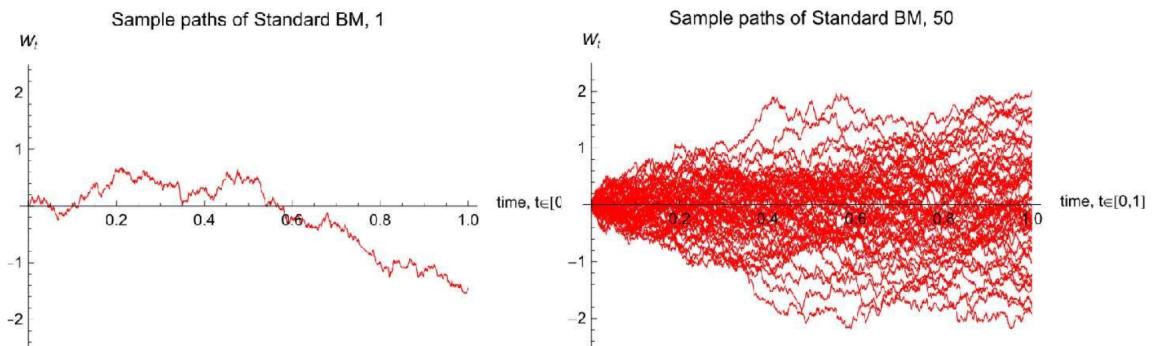
### 6.2.1 Standard Brownian motion

Let  $(\Omega, F, P)$  be a probability space. A standard Brownian motion (or Wiener process) under  $P$  is a stochastic process,  $\{W_t, t \geq 0\}$ , with continuous state space  $R$  and  $T = R^+$ , and the following defining properties:

- $W_0 = 0$
- independent increments, i.e. for every choice of  $0 \leq t_0 < t_1 < \dots < t_n, n \geq 1, W_{t_1} - W_{t_0}, W_{t_2} - W_{t_1}, \dots$ , are independent random variables.
- Gaussian increments, i.e. for  $0 \leq s < t, W_t - W_s \sim N(0, t - s)$ .
- Continuous sample paths (no jumps)
- stationary increments, i.e. for  $0 \leq s < t$  and  $h \geq 0, W_t - W_s \xrightarrow{d} W_{t+h} - W_{s+h}$ .

Statistical properties of standard Brownian motion:

- $E(W_t) = 0$
- $Var(W_t) = t$
- $Cov(W_s, W_t) = \min(s, t)$
- $Corr(W_s, W_t) = \sqrt{\frac{\min(s,t)}{\max(s,t)}}$



**Fig. 6.2.** Illustration of the Brownian motion

Properties of standard Brownian motion:

- $W_t$  is a Markov process
- $W_t$  is a martingale
- $W_t$  returns infinitely often to 0 and to any other level
- $W_t$  is 0.5 self-similar, i.e.

$$(T^{\frac{1}{2}}W_{t_1}, \dots, T^{\frac{1}{2}}W_{t_n}) \xrightarrow{d} (W_{T^{-\frac{1}{2}}t_1}, \dots, W_{T^{-\frac{1}{2}}t_n})$$

for every  $T > 0$ , any choice of  $t_i \geq 0, i = 1, \dots, n$  and  $n \geq 1$ .

- $W_t^* = \frac{1}{\sqrt{c}} W_{ct}$  is also a standard Brownian motion (scaling property)
- $W_t^{**} = tW_{1/t}$  is also a standard Brownian motion (inversion property)
- $W_t$  has nowhere differentiable paths
- $W_t$  has unbounded variation

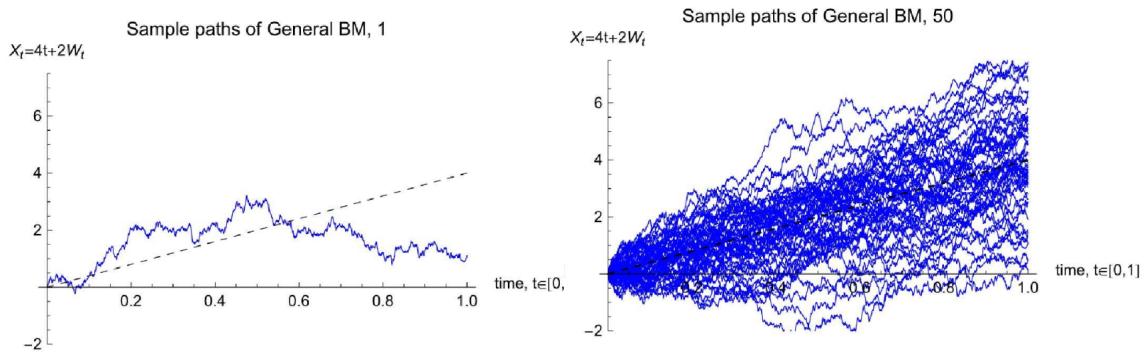
### 6.2.2 General Brownian motion

General Brownian motion with drift parameter  $\mu \in R$  and diffusion (volatility) parameter  $\sigma > 0$  is a stochastic process,  $\{X_t, t > 0\}$ ,

$$X_t = X_0 + \mu t + \sigma W_t$$

with Gaussian increments,  $X_t - X_s \sim N(\mu(t-s), \sigma^2(t-s))$  for  $0 \leq s < t$ . We have

- $E(X_t - X_0) = \mu t$
- $Var(X_t) = \sigma^2 t$
- $Cov(X_s, X_t) = \sigma^2 \min(s, t)$



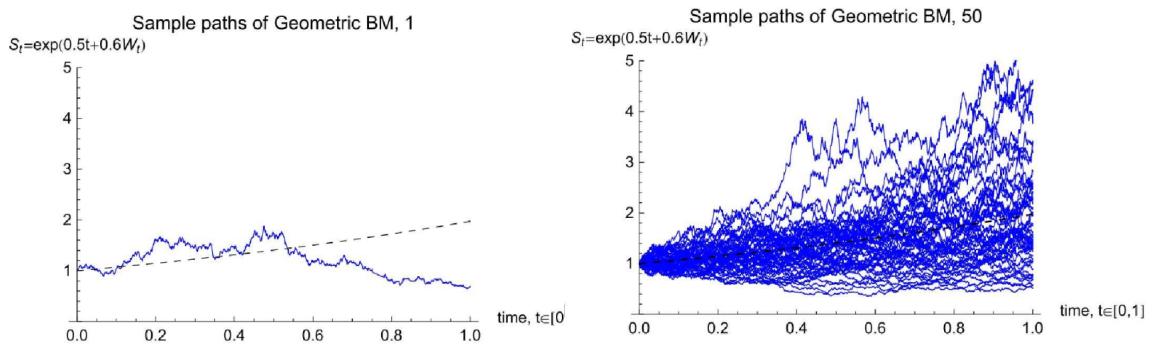
### 6.2.3 Geometric Brownian motion

Geometric Brownian motion is a stochastic process,  $\{S_t, t \geq 0\}$ , such that

$$S_t = e^{X_t} = S_0 e^{\mu t + \sigma W_t}$$

$S_t \geq 0$  for all  $t \geq 0$  and  $S_t \sim LogN(X_0 + \mu t, \sigma^2 t)$ .

- $E(S_t) = e^{X_0 + (\mu + 0.5\sigma^2)t}$
- $Var(S_t) = e^{2X_0 + (2\mu + \sigma^2)t} (e^{\sigma^2 t} - 1) = [E(S_t)]^2 (e^{\sigma^2 t} - 1)$
- $Cov(S_s, S_t) = e^{2X_0 + (\mu + 0.5\sigma^2)(s+t)} (e^{\sigma^2 t} - 1), 0 \leq s < t.$



## 6.3 Martingales

### 6.3.1 Discrete time martingales

A discrete time stochastic process,  $\{X_n\}$ , is said to be a martingale if

- $E(|X_n|) < \infty$  for all  $n$
  - $E(X_n | X_0, \dots, X_m) = X_m$  for all  $m < n$
- $\Rightarrow$  The current value  $X_m$  is the optimal estimator of its future value  $X_n$ .
- $\Rightarrow$  The expected change in the process is zero.
- $\Rightarrow$  A martingale has a constant mean (driftless)

$$E(X_n) = E(E(X_n | X_0, \dots, X_m)) = E(X_m)$$

**Example 6.1.** (risk-neutral probability): Suppose a share has price  $S_t$  at time  $t$ , and assume for simplicity that it does not pay dividends. Let  $S_t^* = e^{-rt}S_t$  be the price of the share discounted at the risk-free rate  $r$ . If, according to a particular probability distribution we assume for  $S_t$ ,  $S_t^* = e^{-rt}S_t$  is a martingale, then for  $m < n$  find

$$E\left(\frac{S_n}{S_m} | S_0, S_1, \dots, S_m\right) = ?$$

### 6.3.2 Filtration

Let  $(\Omega, F, P)$  be a probability space on which a Brownian motion  $W_t$ ,  $t \geq 0$ , is defined. A **filtration** for the Brownian motion is a collection of  $\sigma$ -algebras,  $\{F_t\}_{t \geq 0}$ , satisfying:

- for  $0 \leq t < u$ ,  $F_t \subset F_u \subset F$  (information accumulates). i.e. there is at least as much information available at the later time,  $F_u$ , as there is at the earlier time,  $F_t$ .
- for each  $t \geq 0$ ,  $W_t$  is  $F_t$ -measurable (adaptivity), i.e. the information available at time  $t$  is sufficient to evaluate  $W_t$ .
- for  $0 \leq t < u$ ,  $W_u - W_t$  is independent of  $F_t$  (independence of future increments). i.e. any increment after time  $t$  is independent of the information available at time  $t$ .

$(\Omega, F, \{F_t\}_{t \geq 0}, P)$  is called the filtered probability space.

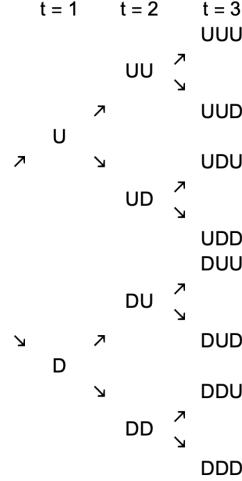
Let  $F_t^X$  represent the information generated by the stochastic process  $X = \{X_t, t \geq 0\}$  on the interval  $[0, t]$ .

The filtration  $\{F_t^X\}_{t \geq 0}$  such that  $F_t^X = \sigma(X_s, s \leq t)$  is the smallest  $\sigma$ -algebra containing only the information obtained by observing the process itself on  $[0, t]$ , is the natural filtration associated with  $\{X_t, t \geq 0\}$ .

We say that the stochastic process  $\{X_t, t \geq 0\}$  is adapted to the filtration  $\{F_t\}_{t \geq 0}$  if  $\sigma(X_t) \subset F_t$  for all  $t \geq 0$  (we also say that  $X_t$  is  $F_t$ -measurable), i.e. if, based upon observations of the trajectory  $\{X_s, 0 \leq s \leq t\}$ , it is possible to decide whether a given event  $A \in F_t$  has occurred or not (or equivalently, whether the information in  $F_t$  is sufficient to determine the trajectory  $\{X_s, 0 \leq s \leq t\}$ ).

If  $\{X_t\}_{t \geq 0}$  is adapted to the filtration  $\{F_t\}_{t \geq 0}$ , then  $\{f(X_t)\}_{t \geq 0}$  is also adapted to  $\{F_t\}_{t \geq 0}$ .

**Example 6.2.** Consider the possible outcome of three days share price, i.e.



- (a) Write down  $\Omega$ ,  $F_0$ ,  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$  and  $F_3$ .
- (b) Suppose  $u = \frac{1}{d}$ , so that  $ud = du = 1$ . Write down  $\sigma(S_2)$ .

Properties of conditional expectation (with filtration):

- $E(c_1X_1 + c_2X_2|F) = c_1E(X_1|F) + c_2E(X_2|F)$
- $E(E(X|F)) = E(X)$
- $E(X|F) = E(X)$  if  $X$  is independent of  $F$
- $E(X|F) = X$  if  $X$  is  $F$ -measurable, i.e.  $\sigma(X) \subset F$
- $E(XZ|F) = XE(Z|F)$  if  $X$  is  $F$ -measurable
- $E(X|F) = E(E(X|F)|F') = E(E(X|F')|F)$  if  $F \subset F'$

### 6.3.3 Continuous time martingales

A continuous time stochastic process,  $\{X_t\}$ , is said to be a martingale with respect to a filtration  $\{F_t\}_{t \geq 0}$  if

- $X_t$  is adapted to the filtration  $\{F_t\}_{t \geq 0}$
  - $E(|X_t|) < \infty$  for all  $t$
  - $E(X_t|F_s) = X_s$  for all  $s \leq t$
- $\Rightarrow$  The current value  $X_s$  is the optimal estimator of its future value  $X_t$ .
- $\Rightarrow$  The expected change in the process is zero.
- $\Rightarrow$  A martingale has a constant mean (driftless)

$$E(X_t) = E(E(X_t|F_s)) = E(X_s) \text{ for all } s \leq t$$

**Example 6.3.** Let  $X_t = e^{\lambda W_t - 0.5\lambda^2 t}$ , where  $\lambda$  is a constant. Show that  $X_t$  is a martingale wrt  $\{F_t\}_{t \geq 0}$ , the filtration associated with  $W_t$ .

**Ex. 6.1.** Show that  $X_t = W_t^2 - t$  is a martingale wrt  $\{F_t\}_{t \geq 0}$ , the filtration associated with  $W_t$ .

## Chapter 7

# Stochastic Calculus and Ito Process

**Stochastic calculus** is a branch of mathematics that operates on stochastic processes.

It allows a consistent theory of integration to be defined for integrals of stochastic processes with respect to stochastic processes and helps to describe continuous-time stochastic processes using stochastic differential equations (SDE).

### 7.1 Ito integral

Suppose that  $W_t$  is a Brownian motion and that  $C_t$  is a stochastic process adapted to the natural filtration of the Brownian motion.

A stochastic integral of the type

$$I(C) = \int_a^b C_s dW_s$$

is called an Ito integral.

A direct approach to  $I(C)$  is doomed to failure. Because  $W_t$  has nowhere differentiable paths and has unbounded (first-order) variation.

However, such Ito integrals can be given a meaning for a suitable class of  $C_s$  through successive approximations by step functions.

#### 7.1.1 Example

Consider the integral

$$\int_0^t W_s dW_s \tag{7.1}$$

and the Riemann-Stieltjes sums

$$S_n = \sum_{i=1}^n W_{t_{i-1}} (W_{t_i} - W_{t_{i-1}})$$

where  $\tau_n : 0 = t_0 < t_1 < \dots < t_{n-1} = t$  is a partition of  $[0, t]$  with  $\|\tau_n\| = \max_{j=1,\dots,n} (t_j - t_{j-1})$ .

Note that

$$S_n = \frac{1}{2} W_t^2 - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^n (W_{t_i} - W_{t_{i-1}})^2 = \frac{1}{2} W_t^2 - \frac{1}{2} Q_n(t)$$

where  $Q_n(t) = \sum_{i=1}^n (W_{t_i} - W_{t_{i-1}})^2$  is the sampled quadratic variation of Brownian motion.

Proof:

$$\begin{aligned} S_n &= W_0(W_1 - W_0) + W_1(W_2 - W_1) + \dots + W_{n-1}(W_n - W_{n-1}) \\ Q_n &= (W_1 - W_0)^2 + (W_2 - W_1)^2 + \dots + (W_n - W_{n-1})^2 \\ &= W_0^2 + 2W_1^2 + 2W_2^2 + \dots + 2W_{n-1}^2 + W_n^2 - 2W_0W_1 - 2W_1W_2 - \dots - 2W_{n-1}W_n \\ &= -2(W_0W_1 + W_1W_2 + \dots + W_{n-1}W_n - W_0^2 - W_1^2 - \dots - W_{n-1}^2) + W_n^2 - W_0^2 \\ &= -2S_n - W_0^2 + W_n^2 \\ &= -2S_n + W_n^2 \\ \therefore S_n &= \frac{1}{2}W_n^2 - \frac{1}{2}Q_n \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} E[Q_n(t)] &= \sum_{i=1}^n E[(W_{t_i} - W_{t_{i-1}})^2] = t \\ Var[Q_n(t)] &= \sum_{i=1}^t Var[(W_{t_i} - W_{t_{i-1}})^2] = 2 \sum_{i=1}^n (t_i - t_{i-1})^2 \quad (\leq 2||\tau_n|| \sum_{i=1}^n (t_i - t_{i-1})) = 2||\tau_n||t \end{aligned}$$

Recall

- Convergence in probability

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} P(|X_n - X| \geq \epsilon) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} P(\{\omega : |X_n(\omega) - X(\omega)| \geq \epsilon\}) = 0 \text{ for any } \epsilon > 0$$

- Convergence in  $r$ -th mean

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} E(|X_n - X|^r) = 0$$

Mean square convergence ( $r = 2$ ) implies convergence in probability.

We have

$$E[(Q_n(t) - t)^2] = E[(Q_n(t) - E[Q_n(t)])^2] = Var[Q_n] \rightarrow 0 \text{ as } ||\tau_n|| = \max_{i=1,\dots,n} (t_i - t_{i-1}) \rightarrow 0$$

i.e. we have shown that  $Q_n(t)$  converges to  $t$  in mean square sense, hence in probability.

$$S_n = \frac{1}{2}(W_t^2 - Q_n(t)) \rightarrow \frac{1}{2}(W_t^2 - t)$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned} (W_{t+dt} - W_t)^2 &= (dW_t)^2 = dt \\ dW_t dt &= 0 \\ (dt)^2 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

Hence, we could define integral (2.1) as a mean square limit

$$\int_0^t W_s dW_s = \frac{1}{2}(W_t^2 - t)$$

We have shown that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty, ||\tau_n|| \rightarrow 0} \sum_{i=1}^n (W_{t_i} - W_{t_{i-1}})^2 = t$$

So, in terms of differentials we write informally

$$(W_{t+dt} - W_t)^2 = (dW_t)^2 = dt \quad (7.2)$$

Furthermore, we have

$$\begin{aligned} dW_t dt &= 0 \\ (dt)^2 &= 0 \end{aligned} \quad (7.3)$$

### 7.1.2 Simple processes

The stochastic process  $\{C_t, t \in [0, T]\}$  is said to be **simple** if it satisfies the following properties

- There exist a partition  $\tau_n$  :and a sequence,  $Z_i, i = 1, \dots, n$  of random variables such that
- $$C_t = \begin{cases} Z_i, & \text{if } t_{i-1} \leq t < t_i \\ Z_n, & \text{if } t = T \end{cases}$$
- The sequence  $Z_i$  is adapted to the natural filtration  $F_{t_{i-1}} = \sigma(W_s, s \leq t_{i-1}), i = 1, \dots, n$ .
  - $E[Z_i^2] < \infty$  for all  $i$

The Ito integral of a simple process  $C$  on  $[0, T]$  is given by

$$\int_0^T C_s dW_s = \sum_{i=1}^n C_{t_{i-1}} (W_{t_i} - W_{t_{i-1}}) = \sum_{i=1}^n Z_i (W_{t_i} - W_{t_{i-1}}) \quad (7.4)$$

The Ito integral of a simple process  $C$  on  $[0, t]$ ,  $t_{k-1} \leq t \leq t_k$ , is given by

$$\int_0^t C_s dW_s = \int_0^T C_s 1_{[0,t]}(s) dW_s = \sum_{i=1}^{k-1} Z_i (W_{t_i} - W_{t_{i-1}}) + Z_k (W_t - W_{t_{k-1}}) \quad (7.5)$$

**Example 7.1.** Let  $C_t = 1$  for  $t \in [0, T]$ . Then we have

$$\int_0^t C_s dW_s = \int_0^t dW_s = W_t - W_0 = W_t \quad (7.6)$$

Let  $\sigma(t)$  be a given deterministic function of time, then it can be shown that

$$\int_0^t \sigma(s) dW_s \sim N \left( 0, \int_0^t \sigma^2(s) ds \right)$$

**Example 7.2.** Let  $C_t = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } 0 \leq t < t_1 \\ 2, & \text{if } t_1 \leq t < T \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$

Then

$$\int_0^t C_s dW_s = \begin{cases} \int_0^t dW_s = W_t, & \text{if } 0 \leq t < t_1 \\ \int_0^{t_1} dW_s + \int_{t_1}^t dW_s + \int_{t_1}^t 2 dW_s = 2W_t - W_{t_1}, & \text{if } t_1 \leq t < T \end{cases}$$

**Example 7.3.** Let  $C_t = \begin{cases} W_{t_{i-1}}, & \text{if } 0t_{i-1} \leq t < t_i \\ W_{t_{n-1}}, & \text{if } t = T \end{cases}$

Then, for  $t_{k-1} \leq t < t_k$ , we have

$$\int_0^t C_s dW_s = \sum_{i=1}^{k-1} W_{t_{i-1}}(W_{t_i} - W_{t_{i-1}}) + W_{t_{k-1}}(W_t - W_{t_{k-1}})$$

### 7.1.3 General Ito integral

Let the stochastic process  $\{C_t, t \in [0, T]\}$  be such that

- $C_t$  is adapted to the natural filtration  $F_t = \sigma(W_s, s \leq t)$ ,  $t \in [0, T]$ .
- $\int_0^T E[C_s^2] ds < \infty$ .

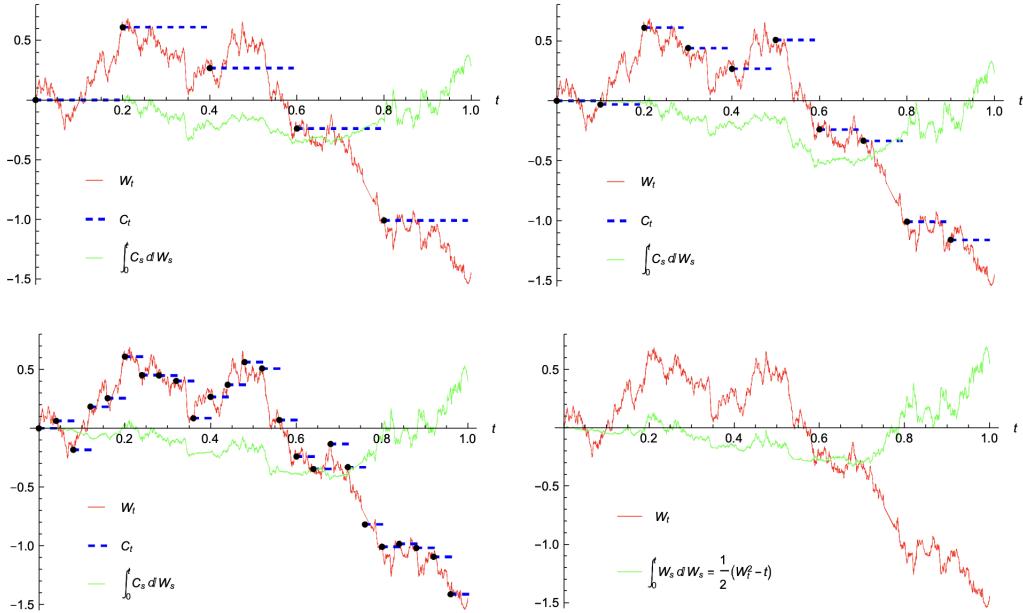
Then  $C_t$  can be approximated by a sequence  $C^{(n)}$  of simple processes such that

$$\int_0^T E[C_s - C_s^{(n)}]^2 ds \xrightarrow{n \rightarrow \infty} 0$$

It can be shown that the mean square limit,  $I_t(C)$ , such that

$$E \sup_{0 \leq t \leq T} [I_t(C) - I_t(C^{(n)})]^2 = E \sup_{0 \leq t \leq T} [\int_0^t C_s dW_s - \int_0^t C_s^{(n)} dW_s]^2 \xrightarrow{n \rightarrow \infty} 0$$

exists and is called the **Ito stochastic integral** of  $C$ .



**Fig. 7.1.** Illustration of Ito integral

An Ito stochastic integral has some properties:

- The Ito stochastic integral is linear.

For constants  $c_1, c_2$  and processes  $C^{(1)}$  and  $C^{(2)}$  on  $[0, T]$

$$\int_0^t (c_1 C_s^{(1)} + c_2 C_s^{(2)}) dW_s = c_1 \int_0^t C_s^{(1)} dW_s + c_2 \int_0^t C_s^{(2)} dW_s$$

- The Ito stochastic integral is linear on adjacent intervals.

For  $0 \leq t \leq T$

$$\int_0^T C_s dW_s = \int_0^t C_s dW_s + \int_t^T C_s dW_s$$

Denote  $I_t(C) = \int_0^t C_s dW_s$ ,  $t \in [0, T]$ . The stochastic process  $I_t(C)$

- is a martingale with respect to the natural Brownian filtration  $\{F_t, t \in [0, T]\}$ , i.e. for  $s < t$

$$E[I_t(C)|F_s] = I_s(C)$$

- has expectation zero

$$E[I_t(C)] = E[I_0(C)] = 0$$

- satisfies the isometry property

$$E\left[\left(\int_0^t C_s dW_s\right)^2\right] = \int_0^t E[C_s^2] ds$$

- has continuous sample paths

## 7.2 Ito formula

### 7.2.1 Diffusion process

Stochastic differential equations (SDE) can be used to define a continuous time stochastic processes.

**Diffusion processes**,  $X_t$ , are processes that satisfy the Ito SDE

$$X_t = X_0 + \int_0^t \mu(s, X_s) ds + \int_0^t \sigma(s, X_s) dW_s \quad (7.7)$$

or expressed in differential form

$$dX_t = \mu(t, X_t) dt + \sigma(t, X_t) dW_t \quad (7.8)$$

For example, a Brownian motion takes the form

$$dX_t = \mu dt + \sigma dW_t$$

### 7.2.2 Ito formula

Let  $f(t, x)$  be a deterministic, twice partially differentiable function with continuous partial derivatives. Let  $X_t$  be a diffusion process adapted to  $W_t$ . Define the process  $Z_t = f(t, X_t)$ . The stochastic differential (the SDE) of  $Z_t$  is given by

$$df(t, X_t) = \left[ \frac{\partial f}{\partial t} + \mu(t, X_t) \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} + \frac{1}{2} \sigma^2(t, X_t) \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} \right] dt + \sigma(t, X_t) \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} dW_t \quad (7.9)$$

$Z_t$  is again a diffusion process.

Proof: Make a second-order Taylor expansion

$$df(t, X_t) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial t} dt + \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} dX_t + \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial t^2} (dt)^2 + \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} (dX_t)^2 + \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial t \partial x} dt dX_t \quad (7.10)$$

As  $dX_t = \mu(t, X_t)dt + \sigma(t, X_t)dW_t$ ,

$$(dX_t)^2 = (\mu(t, X_t)dt)^2 + (\sigma(t, X_t)dW_t)^2 + 2\mu(t, X_t)\sigma(t, X_t)dtdW_t$$

For small  $dt$ , we have  $(dt)^2 \rightarrow 0$ ,  $dtdW_t \rightarrow 0$  and  $(dW_t)^2 \rightarrow dt$ .

$$\therefore (dX_t)^2 = \sigma^2(t, X_t)dt$$

Plugging everything in completes the proof.

**Example 7.4.** Let  $f(x) = x^2$ . Find the SDE for  $W_t^2$ .

**Solution:** Let  $X_t = W_t$ . Therefore  $dX_t = dW_t$  and it is a diffusion process with  $\mu = 0$  and  $\sigma = 1$ . Then

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = 2x \quad \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} = 2 \quad \frac{\partial f}{\partial t} = 0$$

$$\begin{aligned} dW_t^2 &= df = \left( \frac{\partial f}{\partial t} + \mu \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} + \frac{1}{2} \sigma^2 \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} \right) dt + \sigma \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} dW_t \\ &= (0 + 0 + \frac{1}{2} \times 1^2 \times 2) dt + 1 \times 2W_t dW_t \\ &= dt + 2W_t dW_t \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^t dW_s^2 &= \int_0^t ds + \int_0^t 2W_s dW_s \\ W_t^2 - W_0^2 &= t + 2 \int_0^t W_s dW_s \\ \therefore \int_0^t W_s dW_s &= \frac{1}{2}(W_t^2 - t) \end{aligned}$$

**Ex. 7.1.** Let  $f(t, x) = x^2 - t$  and  $X_t = W_t$ . Find the SDE for  $W_t^2 - t$  and compare the resulting SDE with Example 2.5.

**Ex. 7.2.** Consider a particular form of geometric Brownian motion  $S_t = f(t, W_t) = e^{(\alpha - 0.5\sigma^2)t + \sigma W_t}$ , where  $\alpha$  and  $\sigma > 0$  are constants. Find the SDE for  $S_t$ .

### 7.2.3 Geometric Brownian motion revisited

A standard model for the price of a risky asset like a stock is

$$\frac{dS_t}{S_t} = \alpha dt + \sigma dW_t$$

where  $\alpha, \sigma > 0$ . Consider the SDE

$$dS_t = \alpha S_t dt + \sigma S_t dW_t \quad (7.11)$$

Suppose  $S_t = f(t, W_t)$ . Comparing (2.11) with (2.9) yields the following system of two partial differential equations

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(t, x) + \frac{1}{2} \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2}(t, x) &= \alpha f(t, x) \\ \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(t, x) &= \sigma f(t, x) \end{aligned}$$

The second equation gives

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}(t, x) = \sigma f(t, x) \implies \frac{\partial f(t, x)}{f(t, x)} = \sigma dx \implies f(t, x) = f(t, 0)e^{\sigma x}$$

Substituting into the first gives

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(t, 0)e^{\sigma x} + \frac{1}{2} f(t, 0)\sigma^2 e^{\sigma x} = \alpha f(t, 0)e^{\sigma x} \implies \frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(t, 0) + \frac{1}{2} f(t, 0)\sigma^2 = \alpha f(t, 0) \implies$$

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial t}(t, 0) = \left(\alpha - \frac{1}{2}\sigma^2\right)f(t, 0) \implies \frac{\partial f(t, 0)}{f(t, 0)} = \left(\alpha - \frac{1}{2}\sigma^2\right)\partial t \implies f(t, 0) = f(0, 0)e^{(\alpha - \frac{1}{2}\sigma^2)t}$$

Thus we obtain

$$f(t, x) = f(t, 0)e^{\sigma x} = f(0, 0)e^{(\alpha - \frac{1}{2}\sigma^2)t + \sigma x}$$

Since  $S_0 = f(0, W_0) = f(0, 0)$ , we have

$$S_t = f(t, W_t) = S_0 e^{(\alpha - \frac{1}{2}\sigma^2)t + \sigma W_t}$$

Hence, the solution of (2.11) is a geometric Brownian motion with drift parameter  $\mu = \alpha - \frac{1}{2}\sigma^2$  and diffusion parameter  $\sigma$ . Thus  $\frac{S_t}{S_0} \sim \text{Log}N((\alpha - \frac{1}{2}\sigma^2)t, \sigma^2 t)$  and

$$E\left[\frac{S_t}{S_0}\right] = e^{\alpha t} \quad \text{Var}\left[\frac{S_t}{S_0}\right] = e^{2\alpha t}(e^{\sigma^2 t} - 1)$$

#### 7.2.4 Mean-reverting process

A standard model for the spot rate of interest (Vasicek model) is

$$dr_t = -\alpha(r_t - \mu)dt + \sigma dW_t$$

where  $\alpha, \sigma > 0, \mu \in R$ .

Let  $X_t = r_t - \mu$ . Consider the SDE

$$dX_t = -\alpha X_t dt + \sigma dW_t \quad (7.12)$$

Suppose  $Y_t = e^{\alpha t}X_t = f(t, X_t)$  where  $f(t, X_t) = e^{\alpha t}x$  and  $X_t$  is a diffusion process with  $\mu(t, X_t) = -\alpha X_t$  and  $\sigma(t, X_t) = \sigma$ . Apply Ito's lemma to  $Y_t$  yields

$$dY_t = [\alpha e^{\alpha t}X_t - \alpha e^{\alpha t}X_t + 0]dt + [e^{\alpha t}]\sigma dW_t$$

which is equivalent to

$$d(e^{\alpha t}X_t) = \sigma e^{\alpha t}dW_t$$

Integrating between 0 and  $t$  we obtain

$$\int_0^t d(e^{\alpha s}X_s) = \sigma \int_0^t e^{\alpha s}dW_s \implies e^{\alpha t}X_t - e^{\alpha 0}X_0 = \sigma \int_0^t e^{\alpha s}dW_s$$

Finally we have

$$X_t = X_0 e^{\alpha t} + \sigma e^{-\alpha t} \int_0^t e^{\alpha s}dW_s$$

or

$$r_t = r_0 e^{-\alpha t} + \mu(1 - e^{-\alpha t}) + \sigma e^{-\alpha t} \int_0^t e^{\alpha s}dW_s$$

Properties:

- $E[X_t] = X_0 e^{-\alpha t}$
- $\text{Var}[X_t] = \frac{\sigma^2}{2\alpha}(1 - e^{-2\alpha t})$

The mean-reverting (Ornstein-Uhlenbeck) process is a Gaussian process with

$$X_t \sim N(X_0 e^{-\alpha t}, \frac{\sigma^2}{2\alpha}(1 - e^{-2\alpha t}))$$

The asymptotic (long term  $t \rightarrow \infty$ ) distribution is  $N(0, \frac{\sigma^2}{2\alpha})$ .

# Chapter 8

# Introduction to Derivative Securities

## 8.1 Derivative securities

### 8.1.1 Definitions

A **derivative security** is a security (financial contract) whose value is derived from that of another underlying, more basic, security.

Underlying securities can include stock, bond, index, interest rate, currency, commodity and so on.

Common securities:

- Forwards
- Futures
- Options
- Swaps

A **forward contract** is an agreement between two parties to buy (or sell) an asset at a pre-specified future date for a delivery (forward) price agreed in advance.

A **futures contract** is a standardised forward contract traded on an exchange.

An **option** is a financial contract which conveys the right, but not the obligation, to engage in a specific transaction, on some underlying security, at or by a pre-specified future date at a specified price.

- Call: right to buy the underlying asset
- Put: right to sell the underlying asset
- European: the right can be exercised only at maturity
- American: the right can be exercised at any time prior to or at maturity

### 8.1.2 Assumptions

Before diving into derivative pricing models, we need to make several assumptions:

- No market frictions: no transaction costs, no bid/ask spread, no taxes, no restrictions on short sales

- The same risk-free interest for borrowing and lending
- Competitive markets: market participants act as price takers
- Rational agents: market participants prefer more to less
- No arbitrage

An **arbitrage** opportunity is a situation where we can make sure profit with no risk. Namely,

- Start at time 0 with a zero-cost portfolio
- At some future time  $T$ 
  - the probability of a loss is 0
  - the probability that we make a strictly positive profit is strictly greater than 0

The principle of no arbitrage states that arbitrage opportunities do not exist. Any two assets (or combination of assets) that have exactly the same cash flows (give exactly the same payments) must have the same price ("Law of one price").

## 8.2 Forward contracts

- $S_t$  is the price of the underlying (share) at time  $t$
- $T$  is the expiry date (maturity)
- $F_{0,T}$  is the forward price (the price the buyer agrees to pay at time  $T$ ) at time  $t = 0$
- $r$  is the risk-free continuously-compounding rate of interest (constant)

### Non-dividend-paying share

The forward price  $F_{0,T}$  should be set so that the value of the contract at time  $t = 0$  is zero.

$$F_{0,T} = S_0 e^{rT} \quad (8.1)$$

**Example 8.1.** A share of XYZ company has a current price of \$42.60. A three-month forward contract on it is issued. Calculate the forward price given that the yield available on three-month government securities is 6% per annum effective.

**Solution:** Here  $S_0 = \$42.60$ ,  $T = \frac{3}{12}$  and  $r = 0.06$ . Apply the formula and we get

$$F_{0,\frac{3}{12}} = \$42.60 \times e^{0.06 \times \frac{3}{12}} = \$43.24$$

### Discrete dividend-paying share

Suppose a stock is expected to make multiple dividend payments,  $D_{t_i}$ , at times  $t_i$ ,  $i = 1, \dots, n$  throughout the life of the forward contract.

$$F_{0,T} = S_0 e^{rT} - \sum_{i=1}^n e^{r(T-t_i)} D_{t_i} = \left( S_0 - \sum_{i=1}^n e^{-rt_i} D_{t_i} \right) e^{rT} = (S_0 - I) e^{rT} \quad (8.2)$$

**Example 8.2.** Suppose XYZ stock costs \$100 today and is expected to pay a \$1.25 quarterly dividend, with the first coming 3 months from today and the last just prior to the delivery of the stock. Suppose the annual continuously compounded risk-free rate is 10%. Calculate the delivery (forward) price of a 1-year forward contract on the stock.

**Solution:** Here  $S_0 = \$100$ ,  $r = 0.1$ ,  $T = 1$  and Dividend = 1.25. Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} F_{0,1} &= \$100e^{0.1 \times 1} - \$1.25(e^{0.1 \times \frac{9}{12}} + e^{0.1 \times \frac{6}{12}} + e^{0.1 \times \frac{3}{12}} + e^{0.1 \times \frac{0}{12}}) \\ &= \$105.32 \end{aligned}$$

In the example, if short-selling is allowed, we can have the following two portfolios:

Portfolio A	Portfolio B
Take out forward at price $F_{0,T}$	Borrow \$100 and buy share
After 1 year $-F_{0,T}$ cash +1 share	After 1 year $-100e^{0.1}$ cash +1 share + dividends of $1.25(1 + e^{0.025} + e^{0.05} + e^{0.075})$

### Continuous dividend-paying share

Suppose a dividend is being paid continuously at a rate proportional to the level of the index, i.e. suppose  $q$  is a constant annualised dividend yield.

$$F_{0,T} = S_0 e^{(r-q)T} \quad (8.3)$$

### Currency exchange

Suppose one has 1€ at time 0. Let the euro-denominated interest rate is  $r_e$  and the exchange rate today is  $S_0 \$/\text{€}$ .

$$F_{0,T} = S_0 e^{(r-r_e)T} \quad (8.4)$$

**Ex. 8.1.** Suppose the euro-denominated interest rate is 2% p.a. continuously-compounded and the dollar-denominated rate is 3% p.a. continuously-compounded. The current exchange rate is 1.25\$/€. Find the 1-year forward rate.

### Commodities

Storage costs are the costs of storing a commodity. They can be regarded as negative income (known series of discrete cashflows or as a continuous outflow).

Let  $U$  be the present value of the storage costs during the life of a forward contract

$$F_{0,T} = (S_0 + U)e^{rT} \quad (8.5)$$

If the storage costs incurred at any time are proportional to the price of the commodity, they can be regarded as negative yield.

$$F_{0,T} = S_0 e^{(r+u)T} \quad (8.6)$$

The forward price is a biased predictor of the future spot price of the underlying.

Consider a  $T$ -year forward contract on a non-dividend-paying share with an expected return of  $\alpha$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} F_{0,T} &= S_0 e^{rT} \\ E_0[S_T] &= S_0 e^{\alpha T} \end{aligned}$$

The quantity  $\alpha - r$  is the risk premium on the asset, i.e. the amount by which the asset is expected to outperform the risk-free asset.

## 8.3 Futures

### 8.3.1 Forward vs Futures

In practice, forward and futures prices are not necessarily the same.

For underlying assets whose values are positively (negatively) correlated with interest rates, futures prices will be higher (lower) than forward prices.

If we ignore the possible differences in liquidity (futures are generally more liquid), transaction costs and tax treatment and assume that the risk-free rate is deterministic, then the forward prices and futures prices should be equal.

Suppose that a futures contract lasts for  $n$  days,  $G_{i,T}$  is the futures price at the end of day  $i$  ( $0 \leq i \leq n$ ),  $r$  is the (constant) risk-free rate per day,  $T$  is the delivery date at which time the value of the underlying security is  $S_T$ .

**Strategy 1:** (1) long position in  $e^\delta$  futures at the end of day 0 and increase the holding to  $e^{(i+1)\delta}$  futures at the end of day  $i$ ,  $1 \leq i \leq n$ ; (2) invest  $G_{0,T}$  (at day 0) in a risk-free zero-coupon bond.

**Strategy 2:** (1) long position in  $e^{n\delta}$  forwards at the end of day 0; (2) invest  $F_{0,T}$  (at day 0) in a risk-free zero-coupon bond.

	time 0	time $T$
<b>Strategy 1:</b>	$G_{0,T}$	$(S_T - G_{0,T})e^{n\delta} + G_{0,T}e^{n\delta} = S_T e^{n\delta}$
<b>Strategy 2:</b>	$F_{0,T}$	$(S_T - F_{0,T})e^{n\delta} + F_{0,T}e^{n\delta} = S_T e^{n\delta}$

### 8.3.2 Hedging with futures

A **short hedge** is a hedge that involves taking a short position in futures contract whereas a **long hedge** is one that involves taking a long position.

Hedging reduces the market risk from future price changes but it makes the overall outcome more certain by reducing the risk, not to make profits.

Futures contracts might not be available on the asset whose price is to be hedged; or the hedger may be uncertain about the exact date when the asset will be bought or sold. Such risk is called **basis risk** and

$$\text{Basis} = \text{Spot price of asset to be hedged} - \text{Future price of contract used}$$

If the asset to be hedged and the asset underlying the futures contract are the same, the basis should be zero at the expiration of futures contract.

Hedging with a futures on a different asset from the one being hedged is called **cross-hedging**.

The hedge ratio is the ratio of the size of the position taken in futures contracts to the size of the exposure in the underlying asset.

Minimum variance (optimal) hedge ratio is

$$h^* = \rho \frac{\sigma_S}{\sigma_F}$$

where  $\rho$  is the coefficient of correlation between  $\Delta S$  and  $\Delta F$  (change in spot and futures prices over the term of the hedge);  $\sigma_S$ ,  $\sigma_F$  are standard deviation of  $S$  and  $F$ .

The hedge effectiveness is the proportion of the variance eliminated by hedging

$$\rho^2 = (h^*)^2 \frac{\sigma_F^2}{\sigma_S^2}$$

This is the  $R^2$  value from a regression analysis of  $\Delta S$  against  $\Delta F$  and a value of 0.8 or higher is regarded effective.

The optimal number of futures contracts required is

$$N^* = \frac{h^* Q_A}{Q_F}$$

where  $Q_A$  is size of position being hedged (number of units of the asset) and  $Q_F$  is the size of futures contract.

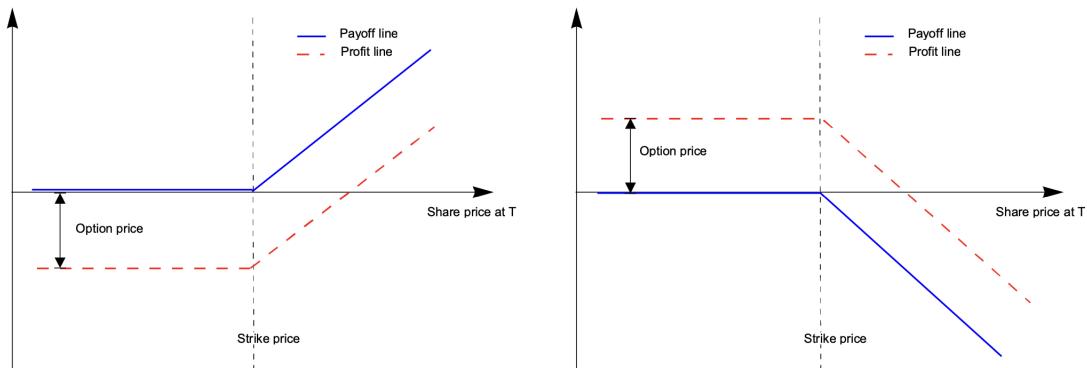
## 8.4 Options

### 8.4.1 Introduction

- $S_t$  is the price of the underlying (share) at time  $t$
- $K$  is the strike (exercise) price
- $T$  is the expiry date (maturity)
- $c_t$  is the price at time  $t$  of a European call option
- $C_t$  is the price at time  $t$  of an American call option
- $p_t$  is the price at time  $t$  of a European put option
- $P_t$  is the price at time  $t$  of an American put option
- $r$  is the risk-free continuously-compounding rate of interest (constant)

#### European call option

Payoff at maturity  $c_T = \max\{S_T - K, 0\} = (S_T - K)_+$ .



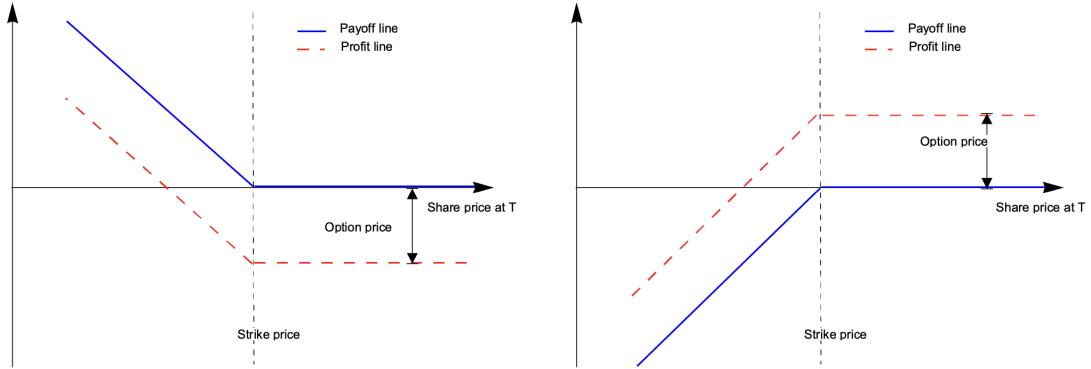
**Fig. 8.1.** European call option

A call option is described as

- in-the-money if  $S_t > K$
- at-the-money if  $S_t = K$
- out-of-the-money if  $S_t < K$

### European put option

Payoff at maturity  $p_T = \max\{K - S_T, 0\} = (K - S_T)_+$ .



**Fig. 8.2.** European put option

A put option is described as

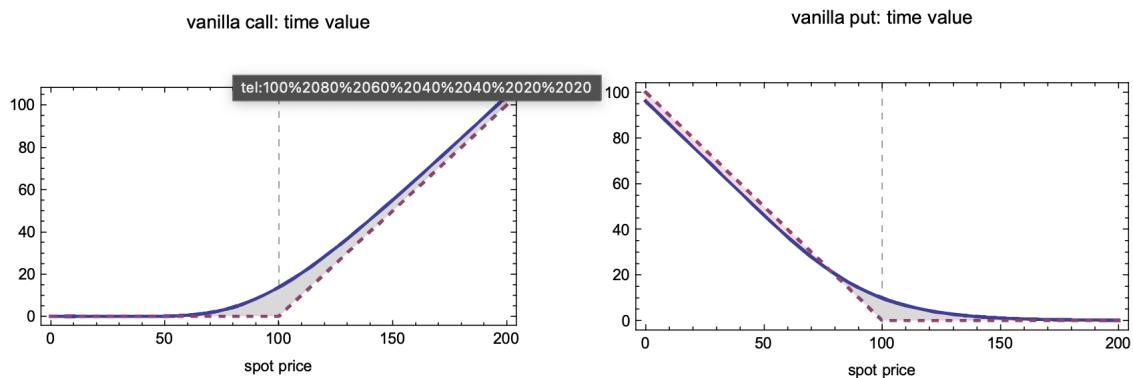
- in-the-money if  $S_t < K$
- at-the-money if  $S_t = K$
- out-of-the-money if  $S_t > K$

The **intrinsic value** of an option is the value assuming the expiry of the contract immediately rather than at some time in the future.

- call option:  $\max S_t - K, 0$
- put option:  $\max K - S_t, 0$

The intrinsic value of an option is: positive if it is in-the-money; zero, if it is at-the-money; zero, if it is out-of-the-money.

The **time value** of an option is defined as the market price of the option minus its intrinsic value.



**Fig. 8.3.** European put option

	$c_t$	$p_t$	$C_t$	$P_t$
Current stock price	+	-	+	-
Strike price	-	+	-	+
Time to expiration	?	?	+	+
Volatility	+	+	+	+
Risk-free rate	+	-	+	-
Dividends	-	+	-	+

For European options on non-dividend-paying shares the following relationship, known as **put-call parity**, holds

$$c_t + K e^{-r(T-t)} = p_t + S_t \quad (8.7)$$

In the case of dividend-paying shares, the put-call parity relationship is

$$c_t + K e^{-r(T-t)} = p_t + S_t e^{-q(T-t)} \quad (8.8)$$

**Example 8.3.** Company  $X$  issues 3-month European call options on its own shares with a strike price of 120 cents. They are currently priced at 30 cents per share. The current share price is 123 cents and the current force of risk-free interest is 6% per annum. If dividends are payable continuously at a rate of  $q = 12\%$  per annum then calculate the fair price for put options on shares of  $X$  at the same strike price.

**Solution:** In this example,  $t = 0$ ,  $T = \frac{3}{12}$ ,  $c_0 = \$0.30$ ,  $K = \$1.20$ ,  $S_0 = \$1.23$ ,  $r = 0.06$ ,  $q = 0.12$ .

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} c_0 + Ke^{-r(\frac{3}{12}-0)} &= p_0 + S_0e^{-q(\frac{3}{12}-0)} \\ \$0.30 + \$1.20e^{-0.06 \times \frac{3}{12}} &= p_0 + \$1.23e^{-0.12 \times \frac{3}{12}} \\ p_0 &= \$0.29 \end{aligned}$$

### 8.4.2 Greeks

The rate at which a derivative price changes as different factors vary (sensitivity) is given by its partial derivatives (the Greeks).

The Greeks help to understand and manage the risks in a portfolio (hedging).

Let  $f(t, S_t)$  be the value at time  $t$  of a derivative when the price of the underlying asset at  $t$  is  $S_t$ .

The rate of change of a derivative price with respect to the price of the underlying share is given by

$$\Delta = \frac{\partial f}{\partial S_t} \quad (8.9)$$

The overall delta of a portfolio is obtained by adding up the deltas for the individual assets and derivatives taking into account the number of units held of each.

#### Delta Hedging

A portfolio for which the weighted sum of the individual deltas is equal to zero is called delta-hedged or delta-neutral.

If the overall delta is equal to zero and the underlying asset prices follow a diffusion then the portfolio is instantaneously risk-free.

#### Gamma Hedging

Let  $f(t, S_t)$  be the value at time  $t$  of a derivative when the price of the underlying asset at  $t$  is  $S_t$ .

The rate of change of  $\Delta$  with the price of the underlying share is given by

$$\Gamma = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial S_t^2} \quad (8.10)$$

For practical hedging purposes, a portfolio with a low  $\Gamma$  is preferable, as costly rebalancing will be required less frequently in order to keep the portfolio approximately delta-hedged.

A portfolio for which the overall gamma is equal to zero is called gamma-neutral.

#### Vega

The rate of change of a derivative price with respect to a change in the assumed level of volatility of the price of underlying share is given by

$$V = \frac{\partial f}{\partial \sigma} \quad (8.11)$$

Since  $\sigma$  is not directly observable, a portfolio with a low  $V$  is preferable.

**Rho**

The rate of change of a derivative price with respect to changes in the risk-free rate of interest is given by

$$\rho = \frac{\partial f}{\partial r} \quad (8.12)$$

A low value of  $\rho$  reduces risk relative to uncertainty in the risk-free rate of interest.

**Lambda**

The rate of change of a derivative price with respect to a change in the continuous dividend yield on the underlying share is given by

$$\lambda = \frac{\partial f}{\partial q} \quad (8.13)$$

**Theta**

The rate of change of a derivative price with respect to the passage of time is given by

$$\Theta = \frac{\partial f}{\partial t} \quad (8.14)$$



# Chapter 9

## Binomial Model

### 9.1 Option pricing - discrete time

In order to price derivative securities, we will

- assume that the underlying share price is a discrete time stochastic process with discrete state space (geometric random walk)
- use binomial trees (lattices)
- apply the no-arbitrage principle (replicating portfolio) and show that it is equivalent to the risk-neutral pricing approach

The model for the stock price is simple but

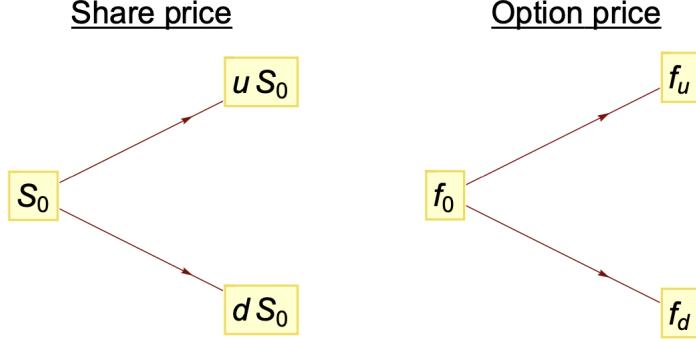
- it introduces the key concepts of financial economic pricing
- it leads us to the celebrated Black-Scholes model as a limiting case

In this model, there are two tradeable assets: a risky asset (e.g. stock) and a riskless asset.

- The share price process,  $S_t$ ,  $t = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ 
  - $S_0 \in R_{++}$
  - $S_{t+1} = \begin{cases} uS_t, & \text{with probability } p \\ dS_t, & \text{with probability } 1-p \end{cases}, d < u, p \in (0, 1), t = 0, 1, 2, \dots$
  - $(\Omega, F, P)$  with a filtration  $\{F_t\}_{0 \leq t \leq T}$  generated by  $S_t$
- The cash process,  $B_t$ ,  $t = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ 
  - $B_0 = 1$
  - assumed to be risk-free, so  $B_t = e^{rt}$
  - $r > 0$ , so  $B_t > B_{t-1}$  for  $t > 0$

#### 9.1.1 One-period model

Suppose we have a stock whose price is  $S_0$  and an option on the stock whose current price (at time  $t = 0$ ) is  $f_0$ . We suppose that the option lasts for one-period time interval to  $t = 1$  and that its payoff is  $f_u$ , if the stock price moves up to  $uS_0$ , and  $f_d$ , if the stock price moves down to  $dS_0$ .

**Fig. 9.1.** One-period model

**Proposition 1:** The model is arbitrage-free if and only if the following conditions hold:

$$d < e^r < u \quad (9.1)$$

At time  $t = 0$  construct a (replicating) portfolio,  $(\phi, \psi)$ , which consists of  $\phi$  units of stock and  $\psi$  units of cash.

$$V_0 = \phi S_0 + \psi$$

At time  $t = 1$  the portfolio has the value

$$V_1 = \begin{cases} \phi u S_0 + \psi e^r, & \text{if the stock price went up} \\ \phi d S_0 + \psi e^r, & \text{if the stock price went down} \end{cases}$$

Let us choose  $\phi$  and  $\psi$  so that  $V_1 = f_1 = \begin{cases} f_u, & \text{if the stock price went up} \\ f_d, & \text{if the stock price went down} \end{cases}$ , i.e. we have the system

$$\begin{aligned} \phi u S_0 + \psi e^r &= f_u \\ \phi d S_0 + \psi e^r &= f_d \end{aligned} \quad (9.2)$$

A replicating portfolio  $(\phi, \psi)$  is one that has the same payoff as the derivative in all circumstances.

Solving (4.2) yields

$$\phi = \frac{f_u - f_d}{S_0(u - d)} \quad \psi = e^{-r} \left( \frac{u f_d - d f_u}{u - d} \right)$$

Now since  $V_1 = f_1$ , by the no-arbitrage principle we have

$$f_0 = V_0 = \phi S_0 + \psi = \frac{f_u - f_d}{u - d} + e^{-r} \left( \frac{u f_d - d f_u}{u - d} \right) \quad (9.3)$$

The replicating portfolio  $(\phi, \psi)$ , is an example of a hedging strategy, i.e. an investment strategy which reduces the amount of risk carried by the issuer of the derivative contract.

**Note** that (4.3) does not depend on the real-world probability measure.

**Example 9.1.** A stock price is currently  $S_0 = \$20$ , and it is known that at the end of three months it will be  $\$22$  with probability  $p = 0.7$  or  $\$18$  with probability  $1 - p = 0.3$ . Suppose that the continuously-compounding risk-free rate is 12% per annum. Calculate the price of a three-month European call option with strike price  $K = \$21$ .

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned} c_0 &= e^{-0.12 \times \frac{3}{12}} \cdot [0.7 \times \max(\$22 - \$21, 0) + 0.3 \times \max(\$18 - \$21, 0)] \\ c_0 &= \$0.68 \end{aligned}$$

From (4.3) we can write

$$f_0 = \frac{f_u - f_d}{u - d} + e^{-r} \left( \frac{uf_d - df_u}{u - d} \right) = e^{-r}[qf_u + (1 - q)f_d]$$

where  $q = \frac{e^r - d}{u - d}$  and the no-arbitrage condition (4.1) ensures that  $0 < q < 1$ . We have

$$f_0 = e^{-r}[qf_u + (1 - q)f_d] = e^{-r}E_Q[f_1|F_0] \quad (9.4)$$

where  $Q$  is a probability measure which gives probability  $q$  to an upward move and  $1 - q$  to a downward move.

The option price is a discounted value of the 'expected' payoff (under the risk-neutral probability measure  $Q$ ).

$Q$  is a artificial probability measure equivalent to  $P$ .  $Q$  is called the martingale measure or the risk-neutral probability measure as opposed to the real-world probability measure  $P$ .

Under the risk-neutral probability measure, all discounted price processes of the risky assets are martingales. In a risk-neutral world the expected return on all assets is the risk-free rate.

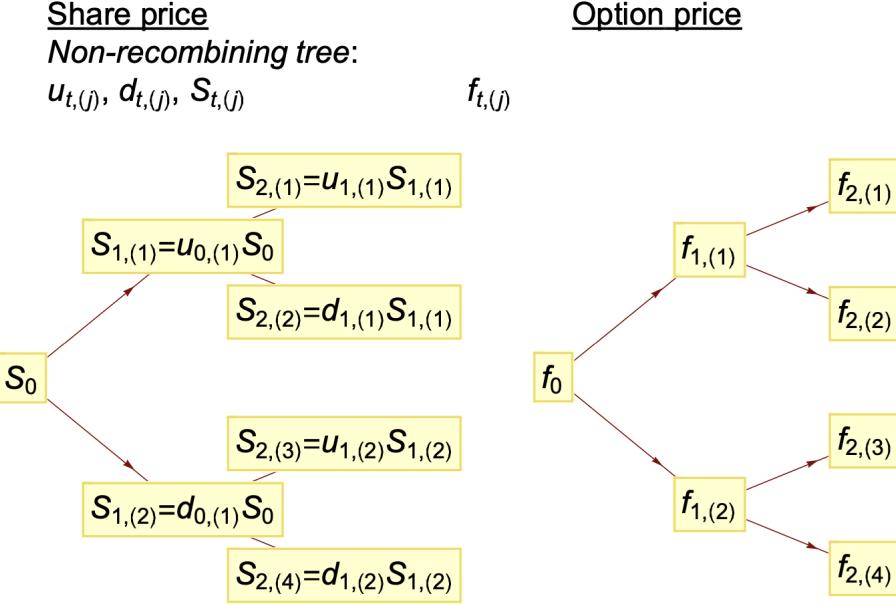
### 9.1.2 Two-period model

#### First fundamental theorem of asset pricing

The market is arbitrage free if there exist a probability measure, equivalent to the original probability measure, such that the discounted prices of all assets are martingales (i.e. a risk-neutral probability measure).

#### Second fundamental theorem of asset pricing

An arbitrage free market is complete if there exist a unique probability measure, equivalent to the original probability measure, under which the discounted prices of all assets are martingales.

**Fig. 9.2.** Two-period model

Working backwards, we can also construct a self-financing replicating strategy  $(\phi_{t+1,(j)}, \psi_{t+1,(j)})$ , where  $\phi_{t+1,(j)}$  is the number of units of stock when in state  $t, (j)$  at time  $t$  and  $\psi_{t+1,(j)}$  is the amount held in cash when in state  $t, (j)$  at time  $t$ , as

$$\phi_{t+1,(j)} = \frac{f_{t+1,(2,j-1)} - f_{t+1,(2,j)}}{S_{t,(j)}(u_{t,(j)} - d_{t,(j)})}$$

$$\psi_{t+1,(j)} = e^{-r} \frac{u_{t,(j)} f_{t+1,(2,j)} - d_{t,(j)} f_{t+1,(2,j-1)}}{u_{t,(j)} - d_{t,(j)}}$$

A portfolio strategy  $(\phi_t, \psi_t)$  is said to be self-financing if it has no external cashflows, i.e.  $\Delta V_t = \phi_t \Delta S_t + \psi_t \Delta B_t$ , i.e. if for all  $t = 1, \dots, n-1$ .

It is essential that a replicating strategy should be previsible, i.e. the replicating portfolio to hold at each node can be determined without any knowledge of the future share price.

Let  $V_t^* = e^{-rt} V_t = e^{-rt} (\phi_{t+1} S_t + \psi_{t+1})$ . We have

$$\begin{aligned} V_t^* - V_{t-1}^* &= e^{-rt} (\phi_{t+1} S_t + \psi_{t+1}) - e^{-r(t-1)} (\phi_t S_{t-1} + \psi_t) \\ &= e^{-rt} (\phi_t S_t + \psi_t e^r) - e^{-r(t-1)} (\phi_t S_{t-1} + \psi_t) \\ &= \phi_t S_t^* + \psi_t e^{-r(t-1)} - \phi_t S_{t-1}^* - \psi_t e^{-r(t-1)} \\ &= \phi_t (S_t^* - S_{t-1}^*) = \phi_t \Delta S_t^* \end{aligned}$$

**Binomial representation theorem:** Suppose the measure  $Q$  is such that the binomial process  $S_t^*$  is a  $Q$ -martingale. If  $V_t^*$  is any other  $Q$ -martingale, then there exists a previsible process  $\phi_t$  such that

$$V_i^* = V_0^* + \sum_{k=1}^i \phi_k \Delta S_k^*$$

In our context:  $S_i^* = e^{-r} S_i$ ;  $\Delta S_k^* = S_k^* - S_{k-1}^*$ ;  $V_i^* = e^{-r} V_i$ ; the required shareholding at time step  $k$ ,  $\phi_k$ , is previsible.

$$\begin{aligned}f_{1,(1)} &= e^{-r}[q_{1,(1)}f_{2,(1)} + (1 - q_{1,(1)})f_{2,(2)}] \\f_{1,(2)} &= e^{-r}[q_{1,(2)}f_{2,(3)} + (1 - q_{1,(2)})f_{2,(4)}]\end{aligned}$$

where

$$q_{1,(1)} = \frac{e^r - d_{1,(1)}}{u_{1,(1)} - d_{1,(1)}} \quad \text{and} \quad q_{1,(2)} = \frac{e^r - d_{1,(2)}}{u_{1,(2)} - d_{1,(2)}}$$

and the no-arbitrage conditions  $d_{t,(j)} < e^r < u_{t,(j)}$  ensure that  $0 < q_{t,(j)} < 1$ . The price at time 0 is found by treating the values  $f_{1,(1)}$  and  $f_{1,(2)}$  in the same way as derivative payoffs at time 1, i.e.

$$f_0 = e^{-r}[q_{0,(1)}f_{1,(1)} + (1 - q_{0,(1)})f_{1,(2)}]$$

where

$$q_{0,(1)} = \frac{e^r - d_{0,(1)}}{u_{0,(1)} - d_{0,(1)}}$$

$$f_0 = e^{-r}E_Q[f_1|F_0] = e^{-r}E_Q[e^{-r}E_Q[f_2|F_1]|F_0] = e^{-2r}E_Q[f_2|F_0] \quad (9.5)$$

**Example 9.2.** Consider a 2-year European put option with a strike price of \$52 on a stock whose current price is \$50. Suppose that the continuously-compounding risk-free interest rate is 5% per annum, and that there are two time steps of 1 year, and in each time step the stock price either moves up by 20% or down by 20%. Calculate the price of the option.

### 9.1.3 n-period model

The results of the one-period and two-period binomial models generalise to the  $n$ -period case,  $f_0 = e^{-nr}E_Q[f_n|F_0]$  and  $E_Q[S_n|F_0] = S_0e^{nr}$ .

The binomial model is an effective model provided the time to maturity,  $T$ , is broken up into a suitable number of sub-periods,  $\Delta t = T/n$ .

The model is flexible and allows for different levels of volatility when in different states but at the end of the  $n$ -th sub-period there are  $2^n$  possible states for the stock price.

Assume that the volatility is the same in all states, i.e.

$$u_{t,(j)} = u \quad \text{and} \quad d_{t,(j)} = d \implies q_{t,(j)} = q$$

for all  $t, (j)$  with  $d < e^r < u$ , and  $0 < q < 1$ . Then computing times are substantially reduced for options with payoffs which are not path-dependent (we have  $n+1$  instead of  $2^n$  possible states).

Assume that the volatility is the same in all states.

Under the assumption that all steps are independent from one another, for the stock price we have

$$S_t = S_0u^{N_t}d^{t-N_t}$$

where  $N_t \sim \text{Binomial}(t, q)$  is the number of up-steps between time 0 and time  $t$ .

Since  $P(N_n = k) = \binom{n}{k}q^k(1 - q)^{n-k}$ ,  $k = 0, 1, \dots, n$ , the price at time 0 of European, non-path-dependent derivative is

$$f_0 = e^{-nr}E_Q[f_n|F_0] = e^{-nr} \sum_{k=0}^n \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!} q^k(1 - q)^{n-k} f(S_0u^k d^{n-k})$$

For a 2-period binomial model we have

$$f_0 = e^{-2r}(q^2 f(u^2 S_0) + 2q(1 - q)f(uds_0) + (1 - q)^2 f(d^2 S_0))$$

### 9.1.4 Alternative underlying assets

The basic binomial tree model can be adapted to deal with e.g. American options, different types of underlying asset, dividend-paying underlying assets ...

**Example 9.3.** As in Example 4.3 but the option under consideration is American rather than European.

#### Options on an equity index

Suppose a stock index (or a stock) pays a continuous dividend at the rate  $g$  per period, which we reinvest in the stock, i.e. if we buy 1 share at time  $t$ , at time  $t+1$  we have  $e^g$  shares.

The no-arbitrage condition is  $d < e^{r-g} < u$ . The replicating portfolio  $(\phi, \psi)$  will satisfy

$$\phi u S_0 e^g + \psi e^r = f_u$$

$$\phi d S_0 e^g + \psi e^r = f_d$$

Solving the above system yields

$$\phi = e^{-g} \frac{f_u - f_d}{S_0(u-d)} \quad \psi = e^{-r} \frac{u f_d - d f_u}{u-d}$$

and

$$q = \frac{e^{r-g} - d}{u - d}$$

so that  $f_0 = e^{-r}[q f_u + (1-q) f_d] = e^{-r} E_Q[f_1 | F_0]$ . The no arbitrage condition ensures that  $0 < q < 1$ .

#### Options on currencies

Suppose the spot exchange rate is  $S_0$  and  $r_f$  is the foreign interest rate continuously-compounded per period.

Taking into account the interest on the foreign-currency-denominated obligation, the replicating portfolio  $(\phi, \psi)$  should satisfy

$$\phi u S_0 e^{r_f} + \psi e^r = f_u$$

$$\phi d S_0 e^{r_f} + \psi e^r = f_d$$

Solving the above system yields

$$\phi = e^{-r_f} \frac{f_u - f_d}{S_0(u-d)} \quad \psi = e^{-r} \frac{u f_d - d f_u}{u-d}$$

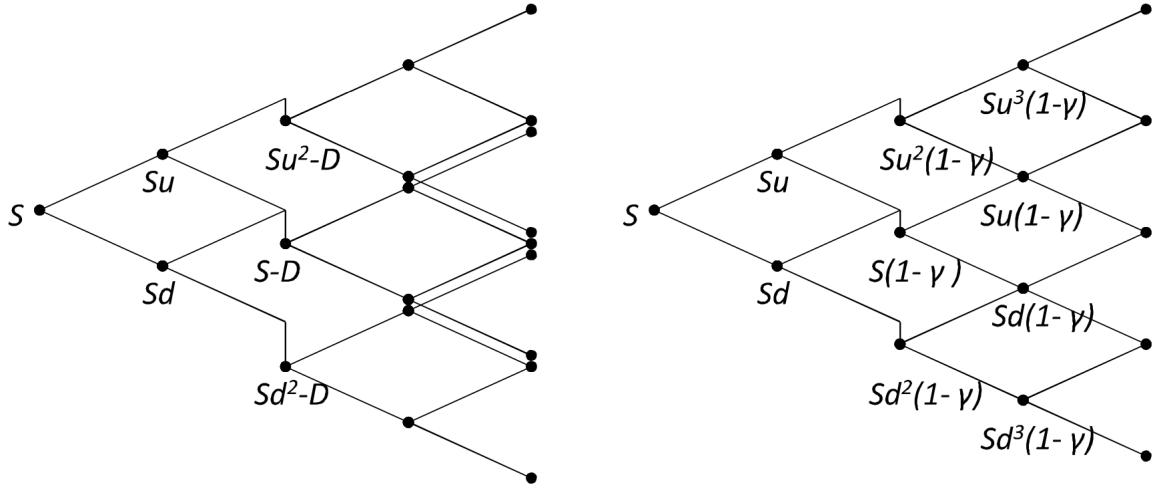
and

$$q = \frac{e^{r-r_f} - d}{u - d}$$

**Example 9.4.** Suppose the euro-denominated interest rate is 3.1% p.a. continuously-compounded and the dollar-denominated rate is 5.5% p.a. continuously-compounded. The current exchange rate is assumed to be 1.05\$/€. Price a dollar-denominated American put option on the euro with strike 1.1\$/€ and  $T = 0.5$ , using a 3-period binomial tree with  $u = e^{(r-r_f)h+\sigma\sqrt{h}}$ ,  $d = e^{(r-r_f)h-\sigma\sqrt{h}}$ ,  $\sigma = 0.1$ ,  $h = 0.5/3$ .

### Options on shares paying discrete dividends

Suppose that a dividend will be paid between time  $t$  and  $t + 1$  and that its future value at time  $t + 1$  is  $D$  (or alternatively, the dividend is proportional to the stock price,  $\gamma$ ).



**Fig. 9.3.** Discrete dividend-paying share

**Example 9.5.** Suppose that  $S_0 = 100$ ,  $T = 3$ ,  $K = 95$ ,  $u = 1.1$ ,  $d = 0.9$  and  $r = 0.03$ . Calculate the price of a European call option on a stock which pays a 5% dividend at  $t = 2$ , assuming  $\Delta t = 1$ .

**Ex. 9.1.** Suppose that  $S_0 = 100$ ,  $T = 2$ ,  $K = 100$ ,  $u = 1.12$ ,  $d = 0.9$  and  $r = 0.06$ . Calculate the price of a European put option on a stock which pays discrete dividend amount of \$4 at  $t = 1$  and  $t = 2$ , assuming  $\Delta t = 1$ .

## 9.2 Approximation to continuous-time model

Recall the geometric Brownian motion model

$$\begin{aligned} dS_t &= rS_t dt + \sigma S_t dW_t \iff S_t = S_0 e^{(r - \frac{1}{2}\sigma^2)t + \sigma W_t} \implies \\ \frac{S_{t+\Delta t}}{S_t} &\sim LogN\left(\left(r - \frac{1}{2}\sigma^2\right)\Delta t, \sigma^2\Delta t\right) \implies \\ E\left[\frac{S_{t+\Delta t}}{S_t} | F_t\right] &= e^{r\Delta t} \\ Var\left[\ln\frac{S_{t+\Delta t}}{S_t} | F_t\right] &= \sigma^2\Delta t \end{aligned} \quad (9.6)$$

For the expected return and the variance of the stock in the binomial model (under  $Q$ ) we have

$$\begin{aligned} E\left[\frac{S_{t+\Delta t}}{S_t} | F_t\right] &= q\frac{uS_t}{S_t} + (1-q)\frac{dS_t}{S_t} = qu + (1-q)d \\ Var\left[\ln\frac{S_{t+\Delta t}}{S_t} | F_t\right] &= [q(\ln u)^2 + (1-q)(\ln d)^2] - \left(E\left[\ln\left(\frac{S_{t+\Delta t}}{S_t}\right) | F_t\right]\right)^2 \end{aligned} \quad (9.7)$$

So, matching the expectations, we have

$$e^{r\Delta t} = qu + (1-q)d \implies q = \frac{e^{r\Delta t} - d}{u - d}$$

and matching the variances, assuming that  $d = 1/u$  and ignoring the terms of higher order than  $\Delta t$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma^2 \Delta t &= [q(\ln u)^2 + (1 - q)(\ln d)^2] - \left( E \left[ \ln \left( \frac{S_{t+\Delta t}}{S_t} \right) | F_t \right] \right)^2 \implies \sigma^2 \Delta t \approx (\ln u)^2 \\ u &\approx e^{\sigma \sqrt{\Delta t}} \quad d \approx e^{-\sigma \sqrt{\Delta t}}\end{aligned}\tag{9.8}$$

Note that we can perform the same analysis under  $P$  and we will obtain

$$p = \frac{e^{\mu \Delta t} - d}{u - d}$$

and expressions (4.8) will be the same. This shows that as we change the measure the expected return on the stock changes but its volatility remains the same (as  $t \rightarrow 0$ ). This is an illustration of the Girsanov's theorem.

**Example 9.6.** A non-dividend paying share has volatility of 20% per annum. Calculate the values of  $u$  and  $d$  for the share price movements over one month.

**Solution:** Using the formula, we have

$$u \approx e^{0.2 \sqrt{\frac{1}{12}}} = 1.06$$

$$d \approx e^{0.2 \sqrt{\frac{1}{12}}} = 0.94$$

For  $t \rightarrow 0$ :

- the binomial scheme converges to the Black-Scholes PDE
- the binomial value of an option converges to the Black-Scholes value

# Chapter 10

## Black-Scholes Option Pricing Model

### 10.1 Introduction

In the last chapter, we looked at option pricing in discrete time. Now we will introduce the model in continuous time.

In order to price derivative securities we will assume that the underlying share price follows a continuous time stochastic process with continuous state space, namely geometric Brownian motion. We will discuss two methods of pricing derivatives in continuous-time

- the PDE approach
- the risk-neutral (martingale) valuation approach

We will derive the Black-Scholes pricing formula and Garman-Kohlhagen pricing formula.

The Black-Scholes model is underpinned by a number of key assumptions but

- it provides a good approximation to reality
- it offers valuable insight into option pricing and is widely used in practice.

#### 10.1.1 Assumptions

The assumptions underlying the Black-Scholes model are as follows:

1. The price of the underlying share follows a geometric Brownian motion ( $\sigma$ -constant).
2. The market in the underlying share is complete: all derivative securities have payoffs which can be replicated
3. There are no risk-free arbitrage opportunities (no-arbitrage principle)
4. The risk-free rate of interest is constant, the same for all maturities and the same for borrowing or lending
5. Unlimited short selling (that is, negative holdings) is allowed
6. There are no taxes or transaction costs

7. The underlying asset can be traded continuously and in infinitesimally small numbers of units

We need to note that each of the assumptions is unrealistic to some degree, e.g.

- Share prices can jump; the distribution of security returns,  $\ln(S_t/S_u)$ , has a higher peak and fatter tails in reality than that implied by the normal distribution; (invalidates 1 and 2)
- The risk-free rate does vary and in an unpredictable way; different rates may apply for borrowing and lending; (invalidates 4)
- Unlimited short selling may not be allowed; (invalidates 5)
- Shares can normally only be dealt in integer multiples of one unit, not continuously and dealings attract transaction costs; (invalidates 2, 5, 6 and 7)

### 10.1.2 The Black-Scholes model

The non-dividend-paying share price process,  $S_t$ ,  $t \geq 0$ , is a geometric Brownian motion, governed by the stochastic differential equation

$$\frac{dS_t}{S_t} = \mu dt + \sigma dW_t \quad (10.1)$$

where  $W_t$  is a standard Brownian motion and  $\mu$  and  $\sigma$  are constants. Hence  $S_t = S_0 e^{(\mu - \frac{1}{2}\sigma^2)t + \sigma W_t}$  and  $\ln S_t = \ln S_0 + (\mu - \frac{1}{2}\sigma^2)t + \sigma W_t \sim N(\ln S_0 + (\mu - \frac{1}{2}\sigma^2)t, \sigma^2 t)$ .

The risk-free Money Market Account (MMA) process,  $B_t$ ,  $t \geq 0$ , is governed by the ordinary differential equation

$$dB_t = rB_t dt \quad (10.2)$$

where  $r \geq 0$  is the constant risk-free rate of interest. Hence,  $B_t = B_0 e^{rt}$ .

#### The Black-Scholes (-Merton) formula

**Proposition 1:** Let  $c_t = f(t, S_t)$  be the price at time  $t$  of a European call option with strike price  $K$  and time to maturity  $T > t$ , and the price of the non-dividend-paying underlying asset at  $t$  is  $S_t$ . Then

$$f(t, S_t) = S_t \Phi(d_1) - K e^{-r(T-t)} \Phi(d_2) \quad (10.3)$$

where

$$d_{1,2} = \frac{\log \frac{S_t}{K} + (r \pm \frac{1}{2}\sigma^2)(T-t)}{\sigma\sqrt{T-t}} \quad (10.4)$$

and  $\Phi(z)$  is the cdf of the standard normal distribution. (Note that  $d_2 = d_1 - \sigma\sqrt{T-t}$ )

Let  $p_t = f(t, S_t)$  denote the price at time  $t$  of the corresponding European put option. Then

$$f(t, S_t) = K e^{-r(T-t)} \Phi(-d_2) - S_t \Phi(-d_1)$$

where  $d_1$  and  $d_2$  are defined in (5.4).

### 10.1.3 Proof - the PDE approach

Since  $S_t$  follows a diffusion process, we first apply Ito's lemma to write a SDE that gives the change in the derivative price,  $f(t, S_t)$ , over a very small time period  $[t, t + dt]$

$$df(t, S_t) = \left[ \frac{\partial f}{\partial t} + \mu S_t \frac{\partial f}{\partial S_t} + \frac{1}{2} \sigma^2 S_t^2 \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial S_t^2} \right] dt + \sigma S_t \frac{\partial f}{\partial S_t} dW_t \quad (10.5)$$

Suppose that at time  $t$ ,  $0 \leq t < T$ , we hold the following portfolio

1. minus one derivative,  $f(t, S_t)$
2. plus  $\Delta = \frac{\partial f}{\partial S_t}$  units of shares

with value

$$V(t, S_t) = -f(t, S_t) + \Delta S_t$$

The (pure) investment gain of the portfolio  $V(t, S_t)$  over the period  $[t, t + dt]$  is

$$\begin{aligned} dV(t, S_t) &= -df(t, S_t) + \Delta dS_t \\ &= \left[ -\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} - \frac{1}{2} \sigma^2 S_t^2 \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial S_t^2} \right] dt \end{aligned} \quad (10.6)$$

$V(t, S_t)$  is an instantaneously risk-free portfolio under the no-arbitrage principle, it must yield a return equal to the risk-free rate of return over the period  $[t, t + dt]$ , i.e.

$$\begin{aligned} dV(t, S_t) &= rV(t, S_t)dt \\ &= [-rf(t, S_t) + r\Delta S_t]dt \\ &= \left[ -rf(t, S_t) + r \frac{\partial f}{\partial S_t} S_t \right] dt \end{aligned} \quad (10.7)$$

Hence, (5.6) must be equal to (5.7). Equating the two, we obtain the following non-stochastic second-order partial differential equation (PDE), known as the Black-Scholes PDE

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} + rS_t \frac{\partial f}{\partial S_t} + \frac{1}{2} \sigma^2 S_t^2 \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial S_t^2} = rf(t, S_t) \quad (10.8)$$

The value of the European call (and put) option can be found by solving (5.8) with the boundary condition

$$f(T, S_T) = \max\{S_T - K, 0\} \quad (10.9)$$

Solving the PDE requires advanced knowledge and will not be covered here. Instead of solving the PDE, we will see another approach which is easier to understand and to compute.

Recall the definitions of the Greeks. Note that (5.8) can be written as

$$\Theta + rS_t \Delta + \frac{1}{2} \sigma^2 S_t^2 \Gamma = rf(t, S_t) \quad (10.10)$$

### 10.1.4 Preliminaries

- $(\Omega, F, P)$ , the share price process,  $S_t = S_0 e^{(\mu - \frac{1}{2}\sigma^2)t + \sigma W_t}$ ,  $t \geq 0$ , i.e.  $dS_t = \mu S_t dt + \sigma S_t dW_t$
- The MMA process,  $B_t = e^{rt}$ ,  $t \geq 0$ , i.e.  $dB_t = rB_t dt$

- Tradable asset - its price at time  $t$  is equal to the total return on the investment up to time  $t$  assuming that we hold onto the asset until that time,  $S_t$  or  $\tilde{S}_t$
- The replicating portfolio - at time  $t$  we hold the portfolio  $(\phi_t, \psi_t)$  where  $\phi_t$  represents the number of units of  $S_t$  held at time  $t$  and  $\psi_t$  is the number of units of  $B_t$  held at time  $t$ . We assume that  $S_t$  is a tradable asset.
- Previsible processes - we require that  $\phi_t, \psi_t$  are  $F_t$ -measurable (so  $\phi_t$  and  $\psi_t$  are known based on information up to but not including time  $t$ )
- Self-financing strategies - the portfolio strategy  $V_t = \phi_t S_t + \psi_t B_t$  is self-financing iff  $dV_t = \phi_t dS_t + \psi_t dB_t$
- Let  $X$  be any derivative payment contingent upon  $T$  where  $T$  is the time of payment of  $X$  ( $X$  is  $F_T$ -measurable and, therefore, depends upon the path  $S_t$  up to time  $T$ )
- Replicating strategy - a self-financing strategy  $(\phi_t, \psi_t)$ , defined on  $0 \leq t \leq T$ , such that  $\phi_t$  and  $\psi_t$  are previsible and  $V_T = \phi_T S_T + \psi_T B_T = X$
- Complete market - the market is complete if for any such contingent claims  $X$  there is a replicating strategy  $(\phi_t, \psi_t)$
- Equivalent probability measures, change of measure and the Radon-Nikodym derivative

Given  $P$  and  $Q$  equivalent measures and a time horizon  $T$ , we can define a random variable  $\frac{dQ}{dP}$  defined on  $P$  possible paths, taking positive real values, such that

$$E_Q[X_T] = E_P \left[ \frac{dQ}{dP} X_T \right]$$

$$E_Q[X_t | F_s] = E_P \left[ \frac{\eta_t}{\eta_s} X_t | F_s \right] = \eta_s^{-1} E_P[\eta_t X_t | F_s] \quad s \leq t \leq T$$

where  $\eta_t$  is the process  $E_P[\frac{dQ}{dP} | F_t]$  and  $X_t$  is adapted to the history  $F_t$ .

**Cameron-Martin-Girsanov Theorem:** If  $W_t$  is a standard Brownian motion under  $P$  and  $\gamma_t$  is a previsible process satisfying the condition  $E_P[\exp(\frac{1}{2} \int_0^T \gamma_t^2 dt)] < \infty$ , then there exists a measure  $Q$  such that

- (i)  $Q$  is equivalent to  $P$
- (ii)  $\frac{dQ}{dP} = \exp \left( - \int_0^T \gamma_t dW_t - \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T \gamma_t^2 dt \right)$
- (iii)  $\tilde{W}_t = W_t + \int_0^t \gamma_s ds$  is a standard Brownian motion under  $Q$

Additionally, the Radon-Nikodym derivative of  $Q$  with respect to  $P$  (at time  $T$ ) is  $\exp(- \int_0^T \gamma_t dW_t - \frac{1}{2} \int_0^T \gamma_t^2 dt)$ .

**Example 10.1.** Recall the geometric Brownian motion

$$dS_t = S_t(\mu dt + \sigma dW_t) \iff S_t = S_0 e^{(\mu - \frac{1}{2}\sigma^2)t + \sigma W_t}$$

where  $W_t$  is a  $P$ -Brownian motion. Show that we can change the measure so that

$$dS_t = S_t(rdt + \sigma d\tilde{W}_t) \iff S_t = S_0 e^{(r - \frac{1}{2}\sigma^2)t + \sigma \tilde{W}_t}$$

where  $\tilde{W}_t$  is a  $Q$ -Brownian motion and  $r$  is an arbitrary constant drift.

**Martingale Representation theorem:** Suppose that  $S_t^*$  is a martingale with respect to  $Q$  ( $Q$ -martingale), i.e. for any  $s < t$ ,  $E_Q[S_t^*|F_s] = S_s^*$ . Furthermore, assume that the volatility of  $S_t^*$  is (with probability 1) always non-zero. Then, if  $V_t^*$  is another  $Q$ -martingale, there exists a unique previsible process  $\phi_t$  such that

$$V_t^* = V_0^* + \int_0^t \phi_s dS_s^* \iff dV_t^* = \phi_t dS_t^*$$

and  $\phi_t$  is previsible.

**Example 10.2.** Show that if the diffusion processes

$$dX_t = \mu_X(t, X_t)dt + \sigma_X(t, X_t)dW_t$$

and

$$dY_t = \mu_Y(t, Y_t)dt + \sigma_Y(t, Y_t)dW_t$$

where  $W_t$  is a  $Q$ -Brownian motion, are martingales, then the martingale representation theorem holds with  $\phi_t = \frac{\sigma_Y(t, X_t)}{\sigma_X(t, Y_t)}$ .

**Solution:**

$$S_t^* = e^{-rt}S_t = e^{-rt}S_0e^{(r-\frac{1}{2}\sigma^2)t+\sigma\tilde{W}_t}$$

$$\begin{aligned} E_Q(S_t^*) &= e^{-rt}S_0e^{(r-\frac{1}{2}\sigma^2)t}e^{0+\frac{1}{2}\sigma^2t} \\ &= e^{-rt}S_0e^{rt}e^{-\frac{1}{2}\sigma^2t}e^{\frac{1}{2}\sigma^2t} \\ &= S_0 \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore S_t^*$  is a martingale.

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore r_t + \sigma\tilde{W}_t &= \mu t + \sigma W_t \\ \tilde{W}_t &= W_t + \left(\frac{\mu - r}{\sigma}\right)t \end{aligned}$$

### 10.1.5 Martingale (5-step) approach

The derivative pricing formula  $V_t = B_t E_Q[\frac{X}{B_T}|F_t]$  can be derived using the martingale approach, which consists of the following 5 steps:

1. Find the equivalent martingale measure  $Q$  under which  $S_t^* = \frac{S_t}{B_t} = e^{-rt}S_t$  is a martingale.
2. Let  $V_t = E_Q[e^{-r(T-t)}X|F_t]$  where  $X$  is the derivative payoff at time  $T$ . This is proposed as the fair price of the derivative at time  $t$ .
3. Let  $V_t^* = E_Q[\frac{X}{B_T}|F_t] = e^{-rt}V_t$ . This is a martingale under  $Q$ .
4. By the martingale representation theorem, there exists a previsible process  $\phi_t$  such that  $dV_t^* = \phi_t dS_t^*$ .
5. Let  $\phi_t = V_t^* - \phi_t S_t^*$  and at time  $t$  hold the portfolio consisting of
  - $\phi_t$  units of the tradable asset  $S_t$
  - $\psi_t$  units of the cash account

At time  $t$  the value of this portfolio is equal to  $V_t$ . Also  $V_T = X$ . Therefore, the hedging strategy  $(\phi_t, \psi_t)$  is replicating and so  $V_t$  is the fair price of the derivative at time  $t$ .

*Step 1:* Using the C-M-G theorem, the equivalent martingale measure  $Q$ , under which  $S_t^* = e^{-rt}S_t$  is a martingale, is such that

$$\frac{dQ}{dP} = \exp\left(-\gamma W_T - \frac{1}{2}\gamma^2 T\right)$$

where

$$\gamma = \frac{\mu - r}{\sigma}$$

is the **market price of risk**.

*Step 2:* Let  $X$  be any derivative payment contingent upon  $F_T$ , payable at some future time  $T$ , where  $F_T$  is the sigma algebra generated by  $S_u$  for  $0 \leq u \leq T$ . Then, the value of the derivative payment at time  $t < T$  is

$$V_t = E_Q[e^{-r(T-t)}X|F_t]$$

*Step 3:* We have

$$V_t^* = E_Q\left[\frac{X}{B_T}|F_t\right] = B_T^{-1}E_Q[X|F_t] = e^{-rT}E_Q[X|F_t] = e^{-rt}E_Q[e^{-r(T-t)}X|F_t] = e^{-rt}V_t$$

$V_t^*$  is a martingale with respect to  $Q$  since for  $0 < s < t$

$$E_Q[V_t^*|F_s] = E_Q\left[E_Q\left[\frac{X}{B_T}|F_t\right]|F_s\right] = E_Q\left[\frac{X}{B_T}|F_s\right] = B_T^{-1}E_Q[X|F_s] = V_s^*$$

*Step 4:* Since  $dV_t^* = \phi_t dS_t^*$ ,  $\phi_t = \frac{dV_t^*}{dS_t^*} = \Delta$ .

*Step 5:* At time  $t$  the value of this portfolio is equal to

$$\phi_t S_t + \psi_t B_t = e^{rt}(\phi_t S_t^* + \psi_t) = e^{rt}(\phi_t S_t^* + V_t^* - \phi_t S_t^*) = e^{rt}V_t^* = V_t$$

At time  $t + dt$

$$\begin{aligned} \phi_t S_{t+dt} + \psi_t B_{t+dt} &= B_{t+dt}(\phi_t e^{-r(r+dt)} S_{t+dt} + \psi_t) = e^{r(t+dt)}(\phi_t S_{t+dt}^* + \psi_t) = \\ &e^{r(t+dt)}(\phi_t S_t^* + \phi_t dS_t^* + \psi_t) = e^{r(t+dt)}(V_t^* + dV_t^*) = e^{r(t+dt)}V_{t+dt}^* = V_{t+dt} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,  $dV_t = V_{t+dt} - V_t = \phi_t dS_t + \psi_t dB_t$ , i.e the portfolio is self-financing. Furthermore,

$$V_T = E_Q[e^{-r(T-T)}X|F_T] = X$$

Hence, the hedging strategy  $(\phi_t, \psi_t)$  is replicating and  $V_t$  is the fair price for the derivative at time  $t$ .

### 10.1.6 Proof - martingale (5-step) approach

#### Digital call

The payoff of this option at exercise time  $T$  is

$$X = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } S_T \geq K \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

The price of the option,  $c_t^D$ , at time 0 is given by

$$c_0^D = E_Q[e^{-rT}X|F_0] = e^{-rT}E_Q[1_{\{S_T \geq K\}}|S_0] = e^{-rT}Q[S_T \geq K] = e^{-rT}Q[S_T^* \geq e^{-rT}K]$$

Under  $Q$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} S_T^* &= e^{-rT}S_T = e^{-rT}S_0e^{(r-\frac{1}{2}\sigma^2)T+\sigma\tilde{W}_t} = S_0e^{-\frac{1}{2}\sigma^2T+\sigma\tilde{W}_t} \\ &= e^{-rT}Q[\ln S_T^* \geq -rT + \ln K] = e^{-rT}Q[\ln S_0 - \frac{1}{2}\sigma^2T + \sigma\tilde{W}_t \geq -rT + \ln K] \\ &= e^{-rT}Q\left[\tilde{W}_t \geq -\frac{\ln \frac{S_0}{K} + (r - \frac{1}{2}\sigma^2)T}{\sigma}\right] = e^{-rT}Q\left[\tilde{W}_1 \geq -\frac{\ln \frac{S_0}{K} + (r - \frac{1}{2}\sigma^2)T}{\sigma\sqrt{T}}\right] \\ &= e^{-rT}[1 - \Phi(-d_2)] = e^{-rT}\Phi(d_2) \end{aligned}$$

### Asset-or-nothing call

The payoff of this option at exercise time  $T$  is

$$X = \begin{cases} S_T, & \text{if } S_T \geq K \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

The price of the option,  $c_t^{AN}$ , at time 0 is given by

$$\begin{aligned} c_0^{AN} &= E_Q[e^{-rT}X|F_0] = E_Q[e^{-rT}S_T 1_{\{S_T \geq K\}}|S_0] = E_Q[S_T^* 1_{\{S_T^* \geq e^{-rT}K\}}] \\ &= E_Q\left[S_0e^{-\frac{1}{2}\sigma^2T+\sigma\tilde{W}_T} 1_{\{S_T^* \geq e^{-rT}K\}}|S_0\right] = E_Q\left[S_0e^{-\frac{1}{2}\sigma^2T+\sigma\sqrt{T}\tilde{W}_1} 1_{\{\tilde{W}_1 \geq -d_2\}}|S_0\right] \\ &= \int_{-d_2}^{\infty} S_0e^{-\frac{1}{2}\sigma^2T+\sigma\sqrt{T}y} f_{\tilde{W}_1}(y) dy = S_0 \int_{-d_2}^{\infty} e^{-\frac{1}{2}\sigma^2T+\sigma\sqrt{T}y} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-\frac{1}{2}y^2} dy \\ &= S_0 \int_{-d_2}^{\infty} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-\frac{1}{2}(y-\sigma\sqrt{T})^2} dy = S_0 \int_{-d_2-\sigma\sqrt{T}}^{\infty} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-\frac{1}{2}z^2} dz \\ &= S_0[1 - \Phi(-d_1)] = S_0\Phi(d_1) \end{aligned}$$

### European call

The payoff of a European call option is

$$X = \begin{cases} S_T - K, & \text{if } S_T \geq K \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

The price of the option,  $c_t$ , at time 0 is given by

$$\begin{aligned} c_0 &= E_Q[e^{-rT}X|F_0] \\ &= e^{-rT}E_Q[(S_T - K)1_{\{S_T \geq K\}}|S_0] \\ &= E_Q[(S_T^* - e^{-rT}K)1_{\{S_T^* \geq e^{-rT}K\}}|S_0] \\ &= E_Q[S_T^* 1_{\{S_T^* \geq e^{-rT}K\}}|S_0] - E_Q[e^{-rT}K 1_{\{S_T^* \geq e^{-rT}K\}}|S_0] \\ &= E_Q[S_T^* 1_{\{S_T^* \geq e^{-rT}K\}}|S_0] - Ke^{-rT}E_Q[1_{\{S_T^* \geq e^{-rT}K\}}|S_0] \\ &= S_0\Phi(d_1) - Ke^{-rT}\Phi(d_2) \end{aligned}$$

The martingale approach has several advantages:

- it gives us much more clarity in the process of pricing derivatives

- it gives us the price as an expectation which can be evaluated explicitly in some cases and in a straightforward numerical way in other cases
- it gives us the replicating strategy for the derivative
- it can be applied to any  $T$ -measurable derivative payment, including path-dependent options (e.g. Asian options, lookback options), whereas the PDE approach, in general, can not.

The martingale approach is often referred to as *risk-neutral pricing*. The measure is called the risk-neutral measure or the equivalent martingale measure.

## 10.2 Garman-Kohlhagen model

So far we have assumed that the underlying share produced no income, so that the price of the underlying share,  $S_t$ , would give us investment return via capital growth only (the total return = capital growth).

Now, assume that dividends are payable continuously at the constant rate of  $q$  p.a. per share, that is, the dividend payable over the interval  $[t, t + dt]$  is  $qS_t dt$  (the total return = capital growth + dividend income).

Let  $\tilde{S}_t$ ,  $t \geq 0$ , be the value of an investment of  $\tilde{S}_0 = S_0$  at time 0 in the underlying dividend-paying share assuming that all dividends are reinvested instantaneously in the same underlying share, that is, by purchasing additional  $q dt$  units over the interval  $[t, t + dt]$ .

The tradeable asset  $\tilde{S}_t$ ,  $t \geq 0$ , is governed by the SDE

$$d\tilde{S}_t = \tilde{\mu}\tilde{S}_t dt + \sigma\tilde{S}_t dW_t \quad (10.11)$$

where  $\tilde{\mu} = \mu + q$ . Hence  $\tilde{S}_t = \tilde{S}_0 e^{(\mu+q-\frac{1}{2}\sigma^2)t+\sigma W_t}$  and  $\tilde{S}_t = S_t e^{qt}$ .

So

$$dS_t = (\tilde{\mu} - q)S_t dt + \sigma S_t dW_t$$

**Proposition 2:** Let  $c_t = f(t, S_t)$  be the price at time  $t$  of a European call option with strike price  $K$  and time to maturity  $T > t$ , and the price of the dividend-paying underlying asset at  $t$  is  $S_t$ , with continuous dividend rate  $q$ . Then

$$f(t, S_t) = S_t e^{-q(T-t)} \Phi(d_1) - K e^{-r(T-t)} \Phi(d_2) \quad (10.12)$$

where

$$d_{1,2} = \frac{\log \frac{S_t}{K} + (r - q \pm \frac{1}{2}\sigma^2)(T - t)}{\sigma\sqrt{T - t}} \quad (10.13)$$

and  $\Phi(z)$  is the cdf of the standard normal distribution. (Note that  $d_2 = d_1 - \sigma\sqrt{T - t}$ ).

Let  $p_t = f(t, S_t)$  denote the price at time  $t$  of the corresponding European put option. Then

$$f(t, S_t) = K e^{-r(T-t)} \Phi(-d_2) - S_t e^{-q(T-t)} \Phi(-d_1)$$

where  $d_1$  and  $d_2$  are defined in (5.13).

The proof of Garman-Kohlhagen formula is similar to that of Black-Scholes so we will leave it as a self-exercise (both PDE and Martingale approaches).

### 10.3 Greeks

$$\Delta_{call} = e^{-q(T-t)} \Phi(d_1), \quad 0 < \Delta_{call} < 1$$

$$\Delta_{put} = e^{-q(T-t)} \Phi(-d_1), \quad -1 < \Delta_{put} < 0$$

$$\Gamma_{call} = \Gamma_{put} = \frac{e^{-q(T-t)} \phi(d_1)}{S_t \sigma \sqrt{T-t}}, \quad \Gamma_{call} = \Gamma_{put} > 0$$

$$\Theta_{call} = q S_t e^{-q(T-t)} \Phi(d_1) - r K e^{-r(T-t)} \Phi(d_2) - S_t e^{-q(T-t)} \phi(d_1) \frac{\sigma}{2\sqrt{T-t}}, \quad \Theta_{call} < 0 \text{(usually)}$$

$$\Theta_{put} = r K e^{-r(T-t)} \Phi(-d_2) - q S_t e^{-q(T-t)} \Phi(-d_1) - S_t e^{-q(T-t)} \phi(d_1) \frac{\sigma}{2\sqrt{T-t}}, \quad \Theta_{put} < 0 \text{(usually)}$$

$$V_{call} = V_{put} = S_t e^{-q(T-t)} \phi(d_1) \sqrt{T-t}, \quad V_{call} = V_{put} > 0$$

$$\rho_{call} = (T-t) K e^{-r(T-t)} \Phi(d_2), \quad \rho_{call} > 0$$

$$\rho_{put} = -(T-t) K e^{-r(T-t)} \Phi(-d_2), \quad \rho_{put} < 0$$

$$\lambda_{call} = -(T-t) S_t e^{-q(T-t)} \Phi(d_1), \quad \lambda_{call} < 0$$

$$\lambda_{put} = (T-t) S_t e^{-q(T-t)} \Phi(-d_1), \quad \lambda_{put} > 0$$

**Ex. 10.1.** Prove the lemma:

$$S_t e^{-q(T-t)} \phi(d_1) = K e^{-r(T-t)} \phi(d_2)$$



# Bibliography

- Acemoglu, D. (2008). Introduction to modern economic growth. Princeton university press.
- Burns, A. F. and Mitchell, W. C. (1946). Measuring Business Cycles. National Bureau of Economic Research, Inc.
- Cagan, P. (1956). The monetary dynamics of hyperinflation. Studies in the Quantity Theory if Money.
- Campante, F., Sturzenegger, F., and Velasco, A. (2021). Advanced macroeconomics: an easy guide. LSE Press.
- Chiang, A. (1984). Fundamental methods of mathematical economics (3rd. ed). MacGraw-Hill.
- Chiang, A. (1992). Elements of Dynamic Optimization. MacGraw-Hill.
- Chu, A. C. (2021). Advanced Macroeconomics: An introduction for undergraduates. World Scientific.
- de la Croix, D. (1996). The dynamics of bequeathed tastes. Economics Letters, 53(1):89–96.
- de la Croix, D. (2012). Fertility, Education, Growth, and Sustainability. Cambridge University Press.
- de la Croix, D. and Michel, P. (2002). A theory of economic growth: dynamics and policy in overlapping generations. Cambridge University Press.
- Evans, G. W. and Honkapohja, S. (2001). Learning and expectations in macroeconomics. Princeton University Press.
- Fan, C. S. (2008). Religious participation and children's education: A social capital approach. Journal of Economic Behavior & Organization, 65(2):303–317.
- Farmer, K. and Bednar-Friedl, B. (2010). Intertemporal resource economics: An introduction to the overlapping generations approach. Springer.
- Farmer, K. and Schelnast, M. (2021). Growth and International Trade: An Introduction to the Overlapping Generations Approach. Springer.
- Galí, J. (2015). Monetary policy, inflation, and the business cycle: an introduction to the new Keynesian framework and its applications. Princeton University Press.
- Galor, O. and Ryder, H. E. (1989). Existence, uniqueness, and stability of equilibrium in an overlapping-generations model with productive capital. Journal of Economic Theory, 49(2):360–375.

- Heer, B. and Maussner, A. (2009). Dynamic general equilibrium modeling: computational methods and applications. Springer Science & Business Media.
- Hirazawa, M. and Yakita, A. (2017). Labor supply of elderly people, fertility, and economic development. Journal of Macroeconomics, 51:75–96.
- Kaldor, N. (1934). A classificatory note on the determinateness of equilibrium. The review of economic studies, 1(2):122–136.
- Kalecki, M. (1943). Political aspects of full employment. Political Quarterly, 14.
- Kydland, F. E. and Prescott, E. C. (1982). Time to build and aggregate fluctuations. Econometrica: Journal of the Econometric Society, pages 1345–1370.
- Le-Van, C. and Nguyen-Huu, T. T. (2020). Lecture notes: Macroeconomics.
- Lucas, R. E. (1973). Some international evidence on output-inflation tradeoffs. The American economic review, pages 326–334.
- Manuelli, R. E. and Sargent, T. J. (2009). Exercises in dynamic macroeconomic theory. Harvard University Press.
- McCandless, G. (2008). The ABCs of RBCs: An introduction to dynamic macroeconomic models. Harvard University Press.
- Michaillat, P. (2023). Lecture notes for math camp.
- Minsky, H. P. and Kaufman, H. (2008). Stabilizing an unstable economy, volume 1. McGraw-Hill New York.
- Nordhaus, W. D. (1975). The political business cycle. The review of economic studies, 42(2):169–190.
- Ramsey, F. P. (1928). A mathematical theory of saving. The economic journal, 38(152):543–559.
- Rogoff, K. and Sibert, A. (1988). Elections and macroeconomic policy cycles. The review of economic studies, 55(1):1–16.
- Romer, D. (2011). Advanced macroeconomics fourth edition. McGraw-Hill.
- Samuelson, P. A. (1939). Interactions between the multiplier analysis and the principle of acceleration. The review of Economics and Statistics, 21(2):75–78.
- Senouci, M. (2014). The endogenous direction of technological change in a discrete-time ramsey model.
- Shone, R. (2002). Economic Dynamics: Phase diagrams and their economic application. Cambridge University Press.
- Simon, C. P. and Blume, L. (1994). Mathematics for economists. Norton New York.
- Slutzky, E. (1937). The summation of random causes as the source of cyclic processes. Econometrica: Journal of the Econometric Society, pages 105–146.
- Sydsæter, K., Hammond, P., Seierstad, A., and Strom, A. (2008). Further mathematics for economic analysis. Pearson education.

- Sydsæter, K. and Hammond, P. J. (2008). Essential mathematics for economic analysis. Pearson Education.
- Tran, Q.-T. (2022). The aging tax on potential growth in asia. Journal of Asian Economics, 81:101495.
- Tran, Q.-T. and Zhang, Y. (2023). Inseikai tohoku spring camp 2023 — Mathematics I: Algebra, calculus and static optimization.
- Varian, H. R. (1992). Microeconomic analysis. Norton New York, 3 edition.
- Vernon, R. (1966). International investment and international trade in the product cycle. The Quarterly Journal of Economics, 80(2):190–207.



# Appendix A

## Cheatsheets

### A.1 Differentiation

See [Tran and Zhang \(2023, Ch. 5\)](#).

#### Basic Rules

$$\begin{aligned}(cf)' &= cf' & (f + g)' &= f' + g' \\(fg)' &= f'g + fg' & (f/g)' &= \frac{f'g - fg'}{g^2} \quad (g \neq 0) \\(f \circ g)' &= f'(g(x)) \cdot g'(x)\end{aligned}$$

#### Common Derivatives

$$\frac{d}{dx}(x^n) = nx^{n-1} \quad \frac{d}{dx}(e^x) = e^x \quad \frac{d}{dx}(\ln x) = \frac{1}{x} \quad \frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{1}{x}\right) = -\frac{1}{x^2}$$

#### Chain Rule

$$\frac{d}{dx}(f(g(x))) = f'(g(x)) \cdot g'(x)$$

#### Product Rule

$$\frac{d}{dx}(uv) = u'v + uv'$$

#### Quotient Rule

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{u}{v}\right) = \frac{u'v - uv'}{v^2} \quad (v \neq 0)$$

#### Power Rule

$$\frac{d}{dx}(x^n) = nx^{n-1}$$

#### Exponential Rule

$$\frac{d}{dx}(e^{u(x)}) = u'(x)e^{u(x)}$$

## A.2 Integration

### Basic Integrals

$$\begin{aligned}\int k \, dx &= kx + C \quad (\text{where } k \text{ is a constant}) \\ \int x^n \, dx &= \frac{1}{n+1} x^{n+1} + C \quad (\text{where } n \neq -1) \\ \int e^x \, dx &= e^x + C, & \int \frac{1}{x} \, dx &= \ln|x| + C\end{aligned}$$

### Common Integrals

$$\begin{aligned}\int e^{ax} \, dx &= \frac{1}{a} e^{ax} + C \\ \int \ln x \, dx &= x \ln x - x + C\end{aligned}$$

### Integration by Parts

$$\int u \, dv = uv - \int v \, du$$

For more detail, see [Tran and Zhang \(2023, Ch. 8\)](#).

## A.3 Taylor Series Formula

See [Tran and Zhang \(2023, Ch. 8\)](#). The Taylor expansion of  $f(x)$  at a point  $a$  is:

$$f(x) = f(a) + f'(a)(x-a) + \frac{f''(a)}{2!}(x-a)^2 + \frac{f'''(a)}{3!}(x-a)^3 + \dots$$

Or, in sigma notation:

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{f^{(n)}(a)}{n!} (x-a)^n$$

### Order 1

The Taylor series formula of order 1 for a function  $f(x)$  centered at  $a$  is given by:

$$f(x) = f(a) + f'(a)(x-a)$$

### Order 2

The Taylor series formula of order 2 for a function  $f(x)$  centered at  $a$  is given by:

$$f(x) = f(a) + f'(a)(x-a) + \frac{f''(a)}{2!}(x-a)^2$$

### Geometric Series

$$\sum_{k=0}^n r^k = 1 + r + r^2 + \dots + r^n = \frac{1 - r^{n+1}}{1 - r} \quad \text{given } |r| < 1.$$

## A.4 Implicit Function Theorem

See [Tran and Zhang \(2023, Ch 10.6\)](#). Let  $F(x, y)$  be a continuously differentiable function defined in a neighborhood of a point  $(a, b)$ . If  $F(a, b) = 0$  and  $\frac{\partial F}{\partial y} \neq 0$  at  $(a, b)$ , then there exists an open interval  $I$  containing  $a$  and an open interval  $J$  containing  $b$ , and a unique continuously differentiable function  $f : I \rightarrow J$ , such that for all  $x$  in  $I$ , the equation  $F(x, f(x)) = 0$  holds.

Furthermore, the derivative  $f'(x)$  where  $y = f(x)$  is given by:

$$f'(x) = -\frac{\frac{\partial F}{\partial x}(x, f(x))}{\frac{\partial F}{\partial y}(x, f(x))}$$

Sometimes, when explicit solutions are not attainable, you can perform comparative statics with this theorem.

**Example A.1.** Find  $y'(x)$  when  $xy = 5$ .

Let  $F(x, y) = xy$ . Then  $F'_x = y, F'_y = x$ . For  $x \neq 0$ , the IFT says that

$$y' = -\frac{F'_x}{F'_y} = -\frac{y}{x}$$

## A.5 Intermediate Value Theorem

See [Tran and Zhang \(2023, Ch 6.10\)](#). Let  $f$  be a continuous function on the closed interval  $[a, b]$ . If  $y$  is any number between  $f(a)$  and  $f(b)$ , then there exists at least one number  $c$  in the open interval  $(a, b)$  such that  $f(c) = y$ .

**Application:** Mostly to prove the existence of a solution.

We can use the Intermediate Value Theorem (IVT) to show that certain equations have solutions, or that certain polynomials have roots. For instance, the polynomial  $f(x) = x^4 + x - 3$  is complicated, and finding its roots is very complicated. However, it's easy to check that  $f(-1) = -3$  and  $f(2) = 15$ . Since  $-3 < 0 < 15$ , there has to be a point  $c$  between -1 and 2 with  $f(c) = 0$ . In other words,  $f(x)$  has a root somewhere between -1 and 2. We don't know where, but we know it exists.

In a more general concept, if you need to solve

$$f(x) = g(x)$$

Sometimes, solving it is difficult. Instead, you can use numerical methods (that is, let the computer do the hard part). However, you may still want to prove the existence of such an  $x^*$ . Then you can show that  $f(x)$  is increasing from  $[-\infty, \infty]$ , while  $g(x)$  is decreasing from  $[-\infty, \infty]$ . Thus, they must cross somewhere, and that somewhere is  $x^*$ . And if  $f, g$  are monotone, then this  $x^*$  is unique.

**Example A.2.** Prove that the equation

$$2x - 5e^{-x}(1 + x^2) = 0$$

has a unique solution, which lies in the interval  $(0, 2)$ .

**Solution:**

Define  $g(x) = 2x - 5e^{-x}(1 + x^2)$ . Then  $g(0) = -5$  and  $g(2) = 4 - 25/e^2$ . In fact  $g(2) > 0$  because  $e > 5/2$ . According to the intermediate value theorem, therefore, the continuous function  $g$  must have at least one zero in  $(0, 2)$ . Moreover, note that  $g'(x) = 2 + 5e^{-x}(1 + x^2) - 10xe^{-x} = 2 + 5e^{-x}(1 - 2x + x^2) = 2 + 5e^{-x}(x - 1)^2$ . But then  $g'(x) > 0$  for all  $x$ , so  $g$  is strictly increasing. It follows that  $g$  can have only one zero.

## A.6 Matrix Algebra

See [Tran and Zhang \(2023, Ch. 9\)](#)

### Matrix Operations

#### Addition and Subtraction

$$A + B = B + A \quad (\text{Commutative})$$

$$(A + B) + C = A + (B + C) \quad (\text{Associative})$$

#### Scalar Multiplication

$$c(A + B) = cA + cB$$

$$(c + d)A = cA + dA$$

#### Matrix Multiplication

$$A(BC) = (AB)C \quad (\text{Associative})$$

$$A(B + C) = AB + AC \quad (\text{Distributive})$$

$$(cA)B = A(cB) = c(AB)$$

#### Matrix Multiplication

Given matrices  $A_{m \times p}$  and  $B_{p \times n}$ , their matrix product  $C = AB$  is defined by the formula:

$$C_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^p A_{ik} \cdot B_{kj}$$

where  $1 \leq i \leq m$  and  $1 \leq j \leq n$ .

In other words, the entry in the  $i$ -th row and  $j$ -th column of  $C$  is obtained by multiplying the elements in the  $i$ -th row of  $A$  with the corresponding elements in the  $j$ -th column of  $B$ , and then summing up these products.

### Transpose

A transpose  $\mathbf{A}^T$  of a  $k \times n$  matrix is the  $n \times k$  matrix obtained by interchanging rows and columns of  $\mathbf{A}$ . Notation:  $\mathbf{A}^T$  or  $\mathbf{A}'$ .

**Definition A.1** (Rules for Transposition).

$$\begin{aligned} (\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B})^T &= \mathbf{A}^T + \mathbf{B}^T, \\ (\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B})^T &= \mathbf{A}^T - \mathbf{B}^T, \\ (\mathbf{A}^T)^T &= \mathbf{A}, \\ (r\mathbf{A})^T &= r\mathbf{A}^T, \\ (\mathbf{AB})^T &= \mathbf{B}^T \mathbf{A}^T. \end{aligned}$$

A matrix is **symmetric** iff  $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{A}'$

## Determinants

### Order 2

The determinant of a  $2 \times 2$  matrix is given by

$$|\mathbf{A}| = \begin{vmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{vmatrix} = ad - cb$$

### Order 3

The determinant of a  $3 \times 3$  matrix is given by:

$$\begin{aligned} |A| &= \det \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} \end{pmatrix} \\ &= a_{11}[a_{22}a_{33} - a_{32}a_{23}] - a_{12}[a_{21}a_{33} - a_{31}a_{23}] + a_{13}[a_{21}a_{32} - a_{31}a_{22}] \end{aligned}$$

For higher order, see [Tran and Zhang \(2023, Ch. 9.4.2\)](#).

## Inverse

### $2 \times 2$ matrix

Given

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}$$

The inverse matrix  $A^{-1}$  is given by:

$$A^{-1} = \frac{1}{ad - bc} \begin{bmatrix} d & -b \\ -c & a \end{bmatrix}$$

provided that  $|A| \neq 0$ .

### $3 \times 3$ matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} \end{bmatrix}$$

The inverse matrix  $A^{-1}$  is given by:

$$A^{-1} = \frac{1}{\det(A)} \begin{bmatrix} e_{11} & e_{12} & e_{13} \\ e_{21} & e_{22} & e_{23} \\ e_{31} & e_{32} & e_{33} \end{bmatrix}$$

Where  $\det(A)$  is the determinant of matrix  $A$ , and the elements  $e_{ij}$  are given by:

$$\begin{aligned}
e_{11} &= a_{22}a_{33} - a_{23}a_{32} \\
e_{12} &= a_{13}a_{32} - a_{12}a_{33} \\
e_{13} &= a_{12}a_{23} - a_{13}a_{22} \\
e_{21} &= a_{23}a_{31} - a_{21}a_{33} \\
e_{22} &= a_{11}a_{33} - a_{13}a_{31} \\
e_{23} &= a_{13}a_{21} - a_{11}a_{23} \\
e_{31} &= a_{21}a_{32} - a_{22}a_{31} \\
e_{32} &= a_{12}a_{31} - a_{11}a_{32} \\
e_{33} &= a_{11}a_{22} - a_{12}a_{21}
\end{aligned}$$

The matrix's inverse exists if and only if the determinant  $\det(A)$  is non-zero.

## Cramer's Rule

For a system of equations:

$$\begin{aligned}
a_{11}x + a_{12}y &= b_1 \\
a_{21}x + a_{22}y &= b_2
\end{aligned}$$

The solutions  $x$  and  $y$  can be found using Cramer's Rule:

$$x = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} b_1 & a_{12} \\ b_2 & a_{22} \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{vmatrix}}$$

$$y = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & b_1 \\ a_{21} & b_2 \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{vmatrix}}$$

Where: -  $A$  is the coefficient matrix:

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{bmatrix}$$

-  $B_x$  is the matrix formed by replacing the first column of  $A$  with the constants column:

$$B_x = \begin{bmatrix} b_1 & a_{12} \\ b_2 & a_{22} \end{bmatrix}$$

-  $B_y$  is the matrix formed by replacing the second column of  $A$  with the constants column:

$$B_y = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & b_1 \\ a_{21} & b_2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Cramer's Rule is valid when the determinant  $\begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{vmatrix}$  is non-zero.

## A.7 Jacobians, Gradients, and Hessians

The Gradient  $\nabla$  is a vector that points in the direction of the steepest increase of a scalar-valued (1D) function of multiple variables. Its magnitude  $|\nabla|$  is the rate of change in that direction. The gradient is a vector and has the same dimension as the number of variables in the function. For a function of  $n$  variables, the gradient is an  $n$ -dimensional vector.

The Jacobian is a matrix that represents the collection of all first-order partial derivatives of a vector-valued function with respect to multiple variables. It provides information about how each component of the vector function changes as the variables change. The Jacobian is a matrix whose size is determined by the number of components in the vector-valued function and the number of variables. For a function with  $m$  components (functions) and  $n$  variables, the Jacobian is an  $m \times n$  matrix.

In summary, the gradient is a vector that describes the rate of change of a scalar-valued (1D) function, while the Jacobian is a matrix that describes the rate of change of a vector-valued ( $n$ -D) function.

The Hessian is just a matrix of second-order mixed partials of a scalar field (that is, gradients). The Hessian matrix is symmetric. This means that the element in row  $i$  and column  $j$  is the same as the element in row  $j$  and column  $i$ . The mixed partial derivatives in the Hessian matrix satisfy the equality of mixed partials  $\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y} = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x}$ . The eigenvalues of the Hessian matrix are indicators of the curvature of the function at a critical point. Positive eigenvalues suggest a local minimum, negative eigenvalues suggest a local maximum, and a mix of positive and negative eigenvalues suggest a saddle point. For more detail, see [Tran and Zhang \(2023, Ch 10\)](#).

### 1D (1 dimension)

Let  $f(x)$  be a one-dimensional function. The Gradient  $\nabla$  is a vector of the first order derivative of  $f$  with respect to  $x$  mapping  $\mathbb{R}^1 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^1$  (a scalar field)

$$\nabla = \frac{df}{dx}$$

The Hessian is a matrix of second-order mixed partials of a scalar field.

$$\mathbf{H} = \frac{d^2 f}{dx^2}$$

The Jacobian is a matrix of gradients for components of a vector field (in this case, only 1 component), thus

$$\mathbf{J} = \frac{dF}{dx} = \frac{df}{dx}$$

So in 1D, Jacobian and Gradient are the same.

### 2D (2 dimensions)

Let  $f(x, y)$  be a two-dimensional function. The Gradient is defined as:

$$\nabla = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} & \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} \end{bmatrix}$$

The Hessian is

$$\mathbf{H} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} & \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y} \\ \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x} & \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2} \end{bmatrix}$$

Consider  $f(x, y)$  and  $g(x, y)$  be a system of two-dimensional functions. The Jacobian matrix  $\mathbf{J}$  for this system is defined as:

$$\mathbf{J} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} & \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} \\ \frac{\partial g}{\partial x} & \frac{\partial g}{\partial y} \end{bmatrix}$$

### 3D (3 dimensions)

Let  $f(x, y, z)$  be a three-dimensional function. The Gradient is:

$$\nabla = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} & \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} & \frac{\partial f}{\partial z} \end{bmatrix}$$

The Hessian is

$$\mathbf{H} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x^2} & \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial y} & \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x \partial z} \\ \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial x} & \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y^2} & \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial y \partial z} \\ \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial z \partial x} & \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial z \partial y} & \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial z^2} \end{bmatrix}$$

Consider  $f(x, y, z), g(x, y, z), h(x, y, z)$  a system of three-dimensional functions. The Jacobian matrix  $\mathbf{J}$  for this system is defined as:

$$\mathbf{J} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} & \frac{\partial f}{\partial y} & \frac{\partial f}{\partial z} \\ \frac{\partial g}{\partial x} & \frac{\partial g}{\partial y} & \frac{\partial g}{\partial z} \\ \frac{\partial h}{\partial x} & \frac{\partial h}{\partial y} & \frac{\partial h}{\partial z} \end{bmatrix}$$

In a sense, The Hessian is the Jacobian of the gradient of a function that maps from n-dimension to 1-Dimension.

## Appendix B

# Solutions to Some Problems

### B.1 OLG Model

The problem is

$$\max_{s_t, n_t} \ln(w_t(1 - \phi n_t) - s_t) + \beta \ln(R_{t+1} s_t) + \gamma \ln(n_t)$$

FOCs

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial U_t}{\partial s_t} &= -\frac{1}{w_t(1 - \phi n_t) - s_t} + \frac{\beta}{s_t} = 0, \\ \frac{\partial U_t}{\partial n_t} &= -\frac{\phi w_t}{w_t(1 - \phi n_t) - s_t} + \frac{\gamma}{n_t} = 0,\end{aligned}$$

which implies that

$$\begin{aligned}(s_t) : s_t &= \beta c_t, \\ (n_t) : n_t &= \frac{\gamma c_t}{\phi w_t}\end{aligned}$$

Using the budget constraint, we can derive

$$\begin{aligned}s_t^* &= \frac{\beta}{1 + \beta + \gamma} w_t, \\ n_t^* &= \frac{\gamma}{\phi(1 + \beta + \gamma)}.\end{aligned}$$

The Hessian

$$\mathbf{H} = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{\Gamma^2} - \frac{\beta}{s_t^2} & -\frac{\phi w_t}{\Gamma^2} \\ -\frac{\phi w_t}{\Gamma^2} & -\frac{\phi^2 w_t^2}{\Gamma^2} - \frac{\gamma}{n_t^2} \end{pmatrix}$$

where  $\Gamma = w_t(1 - \phi n_t) - s_t$ . The leading principal minors are

$$\begin{aligned}|\mathbf{H}_1| &= -\frac{1}{\Gamma^2} - \frac{\beta}{s_t^2} < 0, \\ |\mathbf{H}| &= \begin{vmatrix} -\frac{1}{\Gamma^2} - \frac{\beta}{s_t^2} & -\frac{\phi w_t}{\Gamma^2} \\ -\frac{\phi w_t}{\Gamma^2} & -\frac{\phi^2 w_t^2}{\Gamma^2} - \frac{\gamma}{n_t^2} \end{vmatrix} = \frac{\gamma}{\Gamma^2 n_t^2} + \frac{\beta}{s_t^2} \left( \frac{\phi^2 w_t^2}{\Gamma^2} + \frac{\gamma}{n_t^2} \right) > 0\end{aligned}$$

so the solutions obtained at the FOCs are sufficient.

We move on to the firm's problem

$$\pi_t = K_t^\alpha L_t^{1-\alpha} - R_t K_t - w_t L_t$$

The FOCs are

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial \pi_t}{\partial K_t} &= 0 \Leftrightarrow R_t = \alpha K_t^{\alpha-1} L_t^{1-\alpha} \equiv \alpha k_t^{\alpha-1} = f'(k_t), \\ \frac{\partial \pi_t}{\partial L_t} &= 0 \Leftrightarrow w_t = (1-\alpha) K_t^\alpha L_t^{-\alpha} \equiv (1-\alpha) k_t^\alpha = f(k_t) - f'(k_t) k_t.\end{aligned}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}k_t &= K_t / L_t, \\ y_t &= Y_t / K_t = k_t^\alpha = f(k_t)\end{aligned}$$

### 1. The law of motion of capital

$$k_{t+1} = \frac{s_t L_t}{L_{t+1}} = \frac{s_t(w_t(k_t), R_{t+1})}{1+n} \quad (\text{B.1})$$

### 2. Existence: We need to show that there is a solution to (B.1). Let us rewrite it to

$$\Delta(k_t, w_t) \equiv (1+n)k_{t+1} - s_t(w_t(k_t), R_{t+1}) = 0$$

Since saving is always smaller than  $w_t$  by a factor  $\beta/(1+\beta+\gamma)$ , one has

$$\begin{aligned}0 &< s_t(w_t(k_t), R_{t+1}) < w_t \\ \Leftrightarrow 0 &< \frac{s_t(w_t(k_t), R_{t+1})}{k_t} < \frac{w_t}{k_t}\end{aligned}$$

## B.2 Endogenous Retirement

A representative agent's problem:

$$\max_{c_t, d_{t+1}, l_{t+1}} U_t = \ln(c_t) + \beta \pi \ln(d_{t+1}) + \gamma \pi \ln(l_{t+1})$$

s.t.

$$\begin{aligned}(1-\tau)w_t + \frac{\pi}{R_{t+1}} [(1-l_{t+1})(1-\tau)\varepsilon w_{t+1} + l_{t+1} p_{t+1}] - c_t - \frac{\pi}{R_{t+1}} d_{t+1} &= 0 \\ 1 - l_{t+1} &\geq 0\end{aligned}$$

Lagrangian: (with  $\lambda_i$ ,  $i = \{1, 2\}$  as Lagrangian multipliers):

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{L} &= \ln(c_t) + \beta \pi \ln(d_{t+1}) + \gamma \pi \ln(l_{t+1}) \\ &+ \lambda_{1,t} \left\{ (1-\tau)w_t + \frac{\pi}{R_{t+1}} [(1-l_{t+1})(1-\tau)\varepsilon w_{t+1} + l_{t+1} p_{t+1}] - c_t - \frac{\pi}{R_{t+1}} d_{t+1} \right\} \\ &+ \lambda_{2,t+1} (1 - l_{t+1})\end{aligned}$$

Karesh-Kuhn-Tucker (KKT) First-order conditions:

- $\mathcal{L}'(c_t) = \frac{1}{c_t} - \lambda_{1,t} = 0 \Leftrightarrow c_t = \frac{1}{\lambda_{1,t}}$
- $\mathcal{L}'(d_{t+1}) = \frac{\beta\pi}{d_{t+1}} - \frac{\lambda_{1,t}\pi}{R_{t+1}} = 0 \Leftrightarrow d_{t+1} = \frac{\beta R_{t+1}}{\lambda_{1,t}} = \beta R_{t+1} c_t$
- $\mathcal{L}'(l_{t+1}) = \frac{\gamma\pi}{l_{t+1}} - \lambda_{1,t}\pi \left[ \frac{(1-\tau)\varepsilon w_{t+1} - p_{t+1}}{R_{t+1}} \right] - \lambda_{2,t+1} = 0$   
 $\Leftrightarrow \frac{\pi\gamma}{l_{t+1}} = \frac{\pi}{R_{t+1}c_t} [(1-\tau)\varepsilon w_{t+1} - p_{t+1}] + \lambda_{2,t+1}$   
 $\Leftrightarrow \frac{\gamma}{l_{t+1}} = \frac{(1-\tau)\varepsilon w_{t+1} - p_{t+1}}{R_{t+1}c_t} + \frac{\lambda_{2,t+1}}{\pi}$
- $\lambda_{1,t} > 0$
- Complimentary slackness:

$$\begin{cases} \lambda_{2,t+1} \geq 0 \\ (1-l_{t+1}) \geq 0 \\ \lambda_{2,t+1}(1-l_{t+1}) = 0 \end{cases} \Rightarrow \begin{cases} l_{t+1} = 1, \lambda_{2,t+1} > 0 \\ l_{t+1} < 1, \lambda_{2,t+1} = 0 \end{cases}$$

The Euler equations:

$$d_{t+1} = \beta R_{t+1} c_t \quad (\text{B.2})$$

$$\frac{\gamma}{l_{t+1}} \geq \frac{(1-\tau)\varepsilon w_{t+1} - p_{t+1}}{R_{t+1}c_t} \quad (\text{B.3})$$

with equality holds if  $l_{t+1} < 1$

The threshold level of  $\hat{\varepsilon}$  therefore can be derive by letting  $l_{t+1} = 1$  where

$$\hat{\varepsilon} = \frac{\gamma R_{t+1} c_t + p_{t+1}}{(1-\tau)w_{t+1}}$$

so that if  $\varepsilon \leq \hat{\varepsilon}$ , agents choose  $l_{t+1} = 1$  to retire fully (not working in the second half of life). Otherwise, they choose  $l_{t+1} < 1$  and work a portion of time in the second period of life.